# AN ALTERNATE VAUGHAN'S IDENTITY IN THE TERNARY GOLDBACH PROBLEM 

$B y$<br>PRIYAMVAD SRIVASTAV<br>МАТН10201205001

The Institute of Mathematical Sciences, Chennai

A thesis submitted to the
Board of Studies in Mathematical Sciences
In partial fulfillment of requirements
For the Degree of DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY of

HOMI BHABHA NATIONAL INSTITUTE


July, 2019

# Homi Bhabha National Institute 

## Recommendations of the Viva Voce Committee

As members of the Viva Voce Committee, we certify that we have read the dissertation prepared by Priyamvad Srivastav titled "An alternate Vaughan's identity in the ternary Goldbach problem" and recommend that it maybe accepted as fulfilling the thesis requirement for the award of Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.


Date: $9 / 7 / 19$
Convener \& Guide - Sanoli Gun


Date: $9 / 7 / 19$
Member 1 - Amritanshu Prasad


Date: $9 / 7 / 19$.
Member 2- Anirban Mukhopadhyay


Date: $9 / 7 / 19$
Examiner - Ritabrata Munshi

Final approval and acceptance of this thesis is contingent upon the candidate's submission of the final copies of the thesis to HBNI.

I hereby certify that I have read this thesis prepared under my direction and recommend that it maybe accepted as fulfilling the thesis requirement.

Date: $917 / 19$

Place: Chennai

## STATEMENT BY AUTHOR

This dissertation has been submitted in partial fulfillment of requirements for an advanced degree at Homi Bhabha National Institute (HBNI) and is deposited in the Library to be made available to borrowers under rules of the HBNI.

Brief quotations from this dissertation are allowable without special permission, provided that accurate acknowledgement of source is made. Requests for permission for extended quotation from or reproduction of this manuscript in whole or in part may be granted by the Competent Authority of HBNI when in his or her judgement the proposed use of the material is in the interests of scholarship. In all other instances, however, permission must be obtained from the author.

## DECLARATION

I, hereby declare that the investigation presented in the thesis has been carried out by me. The work is original and has not been submitted earlier as a whole or in part for a degree / diploma at this or any other Institution / University.

Priyamvad Srivastav

# LIST OF PUBLICATIONS ARISING FROM THE THESIS 

## Journal

1. "On correlations of certain multiplicative functions, R. Balasubramanian, Sumit Giri and Priyamvad Srivastav, J. Number Theory, 2017, 174, 221-238.
2. "On the number of factorizations of an integer", R. Balasubramanian and Priyamvad Srivastav, J. Ramanujan Math. Soc., 2017, 32, 417-430.

Priyamvad Srivastav

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

First of all, I express my deepest gratitude to Professor R. Balasubramanian for all the time and effort he has devoted to me. He patiently listened to all my naive ideas and guided me in the right direction. I have benefited greatly from his knowledge and guidance and consider myself fortunate to have had the opportunity to work with him.

I am thankful to my thesis guide Professor Sanoli Gun, who has always encouraged me towards my work and has been a very positive influence. She has gone out of her way to help me on many occasions during my time at IMSc.

I would like to thank Prof. Gyan Prakash and Prof. Surya Ramana for their guidance and helpful suggestions from time to time. I also thank the number theory group in IMSc and around India, particularly, Prof. Anirban Mukhodpadhyay, Prof. Srinivas Kotyada, Prof. Purusottam Rath, Prof. R. Thangadurai and Prof. Shanta Laishram for many interesting lectures and discussions.

I would like to thank Professor Olivier Ramaré for many fruitful interactions. I have learnt a lot from him and it has ignited my interest on various problems in number theory, and particularly a problem concerning product of primes in arithmetic progressions. I would like to thank Professor Jean-Marc Deshouillers for his support and for delivering interesting lectures on diverse topics in number theory. I would also like to thank CEFIPRA for supporting my visit to France. I thank Prof. Ram Murty and Prof. V. Kumar Murty for their many lively lectures and engaging discussions.

I take this opportunity to thank the faculty members of IMSc and particularly, my committee members Prof. Amritanshu Prasad and Prof. Vijay Kodiyalam, for their support and the wonderful lectures delivered during coursework. I am extremely grateful to the faculty at Indian Statistical Institute, Bangalore, particularly

Prof. B. Sury, Prof. N.S.N. Sastry, Prof. P.L. Muthuramalingam, Prof. Bhaskar Bagchi for their incredible teaching and inspiration. They have played a major role in shaping my interests during graduation. I also thank Prof. Udayan Prajapati and Mr. Amarnath Murthy for their support and encouragement to pursue mathematics in my pre college days. I also thank all the teachers who have taught me in any manner, including my time in high school.

I would like to thank to the Institute of Mathematical sciences for a wonderful research atmosphere. I thank the Director, the administration, the staff and all service providers for making our life smooth and comfortable. I am also thankful to IIT Bombay for its hospitality during the time I spent there. I would particularly like to thank Prof. Ravi Raghunathan and Prof. Jugal Verma for their extended help and support.

Life in IMSc would have been uneventful without my friends and batchmates. I thank Abinash, Anirban, Prasanna and Prathik for all the memorable discussions about everything under the sun, including critical analysis of cricket and football matches. I also thank my batchmates Sohan, Keshab, Arun, Narayanan and Raghu for many wonderful memories and insightful conversations and also Arnab, Pulak, Dheeraj, Sagnik, Dipanjan, Pranendu, and the list goes on. I would like to thank Sumit, Arghya, Issan, Kamalakshya and Kasi for many interactions and for offering sound advice on several occasions. I thank my friends from the undergraduate days, particularly Ankit, Chandranandan, Ravi, Bibekananda, Bhargob, Irfan, Shariq, Ashirvad and Harsh for all the lasting memories, including our cricket sessions.

I am thankful to my father, my mother and my elder brother for their constant support in this period and throughout my life. It was only with their support, that I was able to sail smoothly through the difficult phases and carry on with work. I also thank all my relatives and well wishers, who have influenced my life in a significant manner.

Finally, words will fall short of expressing my gratitude to his holiness Sri Sri Ravi Shankar, whose timeless wisdom and guidance have had a deep and profound impact on me. It has brought purpose and direction to my life.

## CONTENTS

Summary ..... 19
Notation ..... 22
List of Tables ..... 23
1 Introduction ..... 25
1.1 The Circle method ..... 25
1.1.1 The Major and Minor arcs ..... 26
1.1.2 Estimation of the integral ..... 27
1.2 An alternate Vaughan's identity ..... 28
1.3 Choice of smoothing functions ..... 30
2 Type-I sums ..... 33
2.1 Smoothing functions and hypothesis ..... 33
2.2 The main result ..... 36
2.3 Preliminary lemmas ..... 40
2.3.1 Trigonometric sums ..... 40
2.3.2 Alternate approximation for $\alpha$ ..... 43
2.3.3 Other important lemmas ..... 45
2.4 Proof of Theorem 2.11 ..... 46
3 Type-II sums ..... 55
3.1 The bilinear exponential sum ..... 55
3.2 Main results ..... 58
3.3 Preliminaries ..... 60
3.3.1 Large sieve inequality ..... 60
3.3.2 Large sieve inequality for primes ..... 61
3.3.3 Combinatorial lemmas ..... 66
3.4 Proof of the main results ..... 69
3.4.1 Proof of Theorem 3.2 ..... 69
3.4.2 Proof of Theorem 3.3 ..... 71
3.4.3 Proof of Theorem 3.4 ..... 74
4 Correlations of certain arithmetic functions ..... 83
4.1 Introduction ..... 83
4.2 Main results ..... 85
4.3 Preliminary lemmas ..... 92
4.4 Proof of the main results ..... 101
4.4.1 Proof of Theorem 4.4 ..... 101
4.4.2 Proof of Theorem 4.6 ..... 102
4.4.3 Proof of Theorem 4.9 ..... 102
4.4.4 Proof of Theorem 4.12 ..... 105
4.4.5 Replacing $x^{\epsilon}$ by a power of $\log x$ in Theorem 4.6 ..... 107
5 Number of factorizations of an integer ..... 109
5.1 Oppenheim's factorization function ..... 109
5.2 The main result ..... 110
5.3 Preliminaries ..... 111
5.3.1 A generalized partition function ..... 111
5.3.2 A generating function for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ ..... 113
5.3.3 Some bounds on factorials and binomial coefficients ..... 114
5.3.4 A lower bound for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ ..... 118
5.4 Proof of Theorem 5.2 ..... 122
5.5 Final remarks ..... 124
Appendix A Appendix for Chapter 2 ..... 125
A. 1 Partial sums of Möbius and related functions ..... 125
A. 2 Explicit values of $C_{j, k, \eta}$ and $T^{l}$ on monomials ..... 128
A. 3 Explicit values in the case $\eta=\eta_{0}$ ..... 131
A. 4 Simplification of $L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x)$ and $R_{\eta_{0}, k, q}(s, x, f)$ ..... 132

## SUMMARY

This thesis deals with the study of three different problems in analytic number theory. It is divided into five chapters. The first three chapters study the ternary Goldbach problem through an alternative approach suggested by Helfgott in his recent breakthrough on the problem. Chapter 4 deals with the study of correlations of arithmetic functions of a certain type and in Chapter 5, we study the distribution of values of the Oppenheim factorization function.

Chapter 1 consists of an introduction, where we describe the Hardy-Littlewood circle method and give a brief overview of Helfgott's approach and the alternative route suggested by him.

In the next two chapters, we prove explicit results for the type-I sums and typeII sums occurring in this new approach. In Chapter 2, we prove a general result with good constants for type-I sums. In Chapter 3, we prove different versions of the large sieve inequality to handle the type-II sums, which are bilinear exponential sums. Our main results lie in the case when both sequences are supported on primes.

In Chapter 4, we study correlations of a certain class of arithmetic functions and improve the error terms in their asymptotic formulas. We apply this method to study similar shifted sums over primes and improve upon an earlier result. The method generalises to study similar shifted sums of more than two functions.

In Chapter 5, we study a problem of a combinatorial nature, concerning Oppenheim's factorization function. It counts the number of nontrivial unordered factorizations of a positive integer. We obtain an upper bound for the number of its distinct values upto a given parameter. It improves the earlier known bounds on this quantity and we also give heuristic arguments to indicate that our bound is essentially the best possible.

## Notation

| Symbol | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| $\mathbb{R}$ | The set of real numbers |
| $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ | Set of non-negative real numbers |
| $\mathbb{C}$ | The set of complex numbers |
| $\mathbb{Z}$ | The set of integers |
| $\mathbb{N}$ | Set of positive integers |
| $\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ | Set of non-negative integers |
| $\mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)$ | $\mathbb{Z}^{r} \backslash\{(0, \ldots, 0)\}$. |
| $x / y z$ | Denotes $\frac{x}{y z}$ for nonzero reals $x, y$ and $z$ |
| $\\|x\\|$ | Distance of $x$ from the nearest integer |
| $e(x)$ | $e^{2 \pi i x}$ |
| $\lfloor x\rfloor,\lceil x\rceil$ | Floor and Ceil functions, respectively |
| $O, \ll$ | Big O notation |
| $O^{*}$ | Big O notation with implied constant 1. |
| $o$ | Little o notation |
| $\alpha$ | An element of $\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$ with an approximation $2 \alpha=a / q+\delta / x$ in |
| $\eta$ | Chapters $1,2,3$ |
| $\delta_{0}$ | max $\{2,\|\delta\| / 5\}$ |
| $\eta$ | Non-negative function supported on $[0,1]$, twice differentiable |
|  | on $(0,1)$ with $L^{1}$-norm 1 and $\eta(0)=\eta(1)=\eta^{\prime}(1)=0$ |


| $n \sim x$ | $x / 2<n \leq x$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| $p$ | A prime number |
| $\\|\boldsymbol{a}\\|,\\|\boldsymbol{b}\\|$ | $L^{2}$-norms of the sequences $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ and $\left\{b_{m}\right\}$ in Chapter 3. |
| $\alpha$ | Denotes $\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right)$, with $\alpha_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ in Chapter 5 |
| $f_{\leq U}, f_{>U}, f_{(U, V)}$ | The restriction of a function $f$ to the intervals $[1, U],(U, \infty)$ and $(U, V)$, respectively |
| $F_{0}(x)$ | An upper bound for $q / \varphi(q)$ when $x \geq \max \{3, q\}$ |
| $f * g$ | Dirichlet convolution of arithmetic functions $f$ and $g$. |
| $f^{\prime}, f^{\prime \prime}, f^{(k)}$ | Denote the first, second and $k$-th derivatives of $f$, respectively |
| Supp (f) | Support of a function $f$ |
| $C^{k}(I)$ | The class of functions $k$-times differentiable on $I$ with a continuous $k$-th derivative |
| $1_{[a, b]}$ | Characteristic function of the interval [ $a, b$ ] |
| $\hat{f}$ | Fourier transform of $f$ normalized by $\hat{f}(t)=\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x) e(-x t) d x$ |
| $\|f\|_{1},\left\|f^{\prime}\right\|_{1}$ | Denotes of the $L^{1}$-norm of $f$ and $f^{\prime}$. If $f$ is differential outside |
|  | finitely many points, $\left\|f^{\prime}\right\|_{1}$ denotes the total variation of $f$ |
| $\left(T^{l} F\right)(x)$ | Defined by $\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-(l+1) t} F(x+t) d t$ |
| $\|\mathcal{I}\|$ | Length of an interval $\mathcal{I}$ |
| $\|S\|, \# S$ | Cardinality of a set $S$ |
| $(\dot{\bar{p}}$ ) | Legendre symbol for a prime $p$ |
| $v_{p}(n)$ | Largest power of a prime $p$ that divides $n$ |
| $\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right),\left[d_{1}, d_{2}\right]$ | GCD and LCM, respectively of positive integers $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ |
| $\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]$ | LCM of positive integers $d_{1}, d_{2}, \ldots, d_{k}$ |
| $\mu$ | Möbius function |
| $\Lambda$ | Von Mangoldt function |
| $\tau$ | Divisor function |
| $\varphi$ | Euler totient function |
| $\sigma$ | Sum of divisors function |

## List of Tables

A. 1 Values of $\rho_{l, k}$131
A. 2 Values of $c_{\eta, l}, c_{\eta, l^{\prime}}$ and $b_{\eta, l}$ when $\eta=\eta_{0} \ldots \ldots$. . . . . . . . . . . . . 132

## Chapter 1

## Introduction

In this chapter, we give a brief description of the Hardy-Littlewood circle method and outline Helfgott's approach to the ternary Goldbach problem.

### 1.1 The Circle method

Let $\eta: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ be compactly supported and twice differentiable, except for finitely many points. Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\eta}(\alpha, x):=\sum_{n} \Lambda(n) \eta\left(\frac{n}{x}\right) e(n \alpha) . \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The version of Hardy and Littlewood [HL23] and subsequent versions are without a smoothing, i.e., with the brutal truncation $n \leq x$. The use of a smoothing is a major ingredient in Helfgott's proof. He works with two different smoothing functions.

To show that an odd positive integer $N$ is expressible as a sum of three primes, one considers the quantity

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}} S_{\eta_{*}}(\alpha, x)^{2} S_{\eta}(\alpha, x) e(-N \alpha) d \alpha=\sum_{\sum n_{i}=N} \Lambda\left(n_{1}\right) \Lambda\left(n_{2}\right) \Lambda\left(n_{3}\right) \eta_{*}\left(\frac{n_{1}}{x}\right) \eta_{*}\left(\frac{n_{2}}{x}\right) \eta\left(\frac{n_{3}}{x}\right) . \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

When (1.2) is positive, it implies the existence of prime powers $n_{1}, n_{2}$ and $n_{3}$ such that $n_{1}+n_{2}+n_{3}=n$. Since the contribution to the above sum when at least one of the $n_{i}$ 's is a proper prime power (not a prime) is negligible, it enough to show that the integral in (1.2) is positive.

### 1.1.1 The Major and Minor arcs

The integral over $\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$ in (1.2) is divided into two parts, namely the Major arcs (denoted by $\mathfrak{M}$ ) and the Minor arcs (denoted by $\mathfrak{m}$ ). The major arcs are small neighbourhoods around rationals having small denominators. The complimentary set forms the minor arcs. The major arcs are normally defined as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathfrak{M}=\bigsqcup_{\substack{q \leq R}} \bigsqcup_{\substack{1 \leq a \leq q \\(a, q)=1}} \mathfrak{M}_{a, q}, \quad \text { where } \quad \mathfrak{M}_{a, q}=\left\{\alpha \in \mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}:\|\alpha-a / q\| \leq \frac{R}{q x}\right\} \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\|$.$\| denotes the distance from the nearest integer and R>1$ is a parameter, which is normally taken be a power of $\log x$. The $\operatorname{arcs} \mathfrak{M}_{a, q}$ can be made disjoint provided $x$ is large enough.

Helfgott's choice of the major arcs was slightly different. It was as follows:

Definition 1.1. Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathfrak{M}_{C_{0}, r}=\bigsqcup_{q \leq(q, 2) r} \bigsqcup_{\substack{\leq a \leq q \\(a, q)=1}}\left\{\alpha \in \mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}:\|\alpha-a / q\| \leq \frac{C_{0}(q, 2) r}{q x}\right\} \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Helfgott chooses $C_{0}=8$ and $r=r_{0}=1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$. This finite choice of $r$ comes from a verification of the Generalized Riemann hypothesis upto a certain height for all $L$-functions with modulus less than $3 \cdot 10^{5}$ which was carried out by Platt [Pla16].

### 1.1.2 Estimation of the integral

Splitting the integral in (1.2) into major and minor arcs, we obtain

$$
\int_{\mathfrak{M}} S_{\eta_{*}}(\alpha, x)^{2} S_{\eta}(\alpha, x) e(-N \alpha) d \alpha+\int_{\mathfrak{m}} S_{\eta_{*}}(\alpha, x)^{2} S_{\eta}(\alpha, x) e(-N \alpha) d \alpha
$$

To estimate the integral over $\mathfrak{M}$, an asymptotic formula for $S_{\eta^{*}}(\alpha, x)$ and $S_{\eta}(\alpha, x)$, for $\alpha \in \mathfrak{M}_{a, q}$ is obtained, using which one can integrate over each $\mathfrak{M}_{a, q}$ and then sum over all $(a, q)=1$ and all $q \leq R$. This will lead to an asymptotic formula

$$
\int_{\mathfrak{M}} \sim C_{\eta *, \eta} \cdot x^{2} .
$$

To bound the minor arc contributions, the following method is used:

$$
\left|\int_{\mathfrak{m}} S_{\eta_{*}}(\alpha, x)^{2} S_{\eta}(\alpha, x) e(-N \alpha) d \alpha\right| \leq \max _{\alpha \in \mathfrak{m}}\left|S_{\eta}(\alpha, x)\right| \cdot \int_{\mathfrak{m}}\left|S_{\eta_{*}}(\alpha, x)\right|^{2} d \alpha .
$$

The integral over $\mathfrak{m}$ above can now be extended to $\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$. An application of the Parseval's identity gives a bound of the order $x \log x$ for $\int_{\mathfrak{m}}\left|S_{\eta_{*}}(\alpha, x)\right|^{2} d \alpha$. Helfgott used a version of the large sieve inequality due to Ramaré [Ram09] in order to get rid of the additional $\log x$ factor above. The idea is to divide the integral over $\mathfrak{m}$ into disjoint annulus of arcs in (1.4) and apply Ramaré's version of the large sieve.

For $\alpha \in \mathfrak{m}$, he obtained a bound of the form [HH13, Theorem 3.1.1]

$$
\left|S_{\eta}(\alpha, x)\right| \leq \frac{C_{1} x \log r}{\sqrt{r}}+C_{2} x^{5 / 6} .
$$

Note that the trivial bound is $x$. Since $r \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$ and $\log r / \sqrt{r}$ is decreasing, a constant saving over the trivial bound is obtained.

### 1.2 An alternate Vaughan's identity

To give an upper bound for $S_{\eta}(\alpha, x)$ for $\alpha \in \mathfrak{m}$, one needs to deal with sums over primes where a decomposition of the Von-Mangoldt function, called the Vaughan's identity is commonly used. The standard version of Vaughan's identity is as follows:

$$
\Lambda=\mu_{\leq U} * \log -\Lambda_{\leq V} * \mu_{\leq U} * 1+1 * \mu_{>U} * \Lambda_{>V}+\Lambda_{\leq V}
$$

where $U, V>1$ are any parameters and $*$ denotes the Dirichlet convolution. Though there are free parameters $U$ and $V$, the identity is not log-free, i.e., summing over the RHS and using trivial bounds, one obtains two additional factors of $\log x$ compared to the LHS. Hence, one needs extra work to get rid of these logarithmic factors.

In [HH13, Pg 49, Eq (3.17)], Helfgott mentions an alternate version of the Vaughan's identity which is essentially log-free. It originates from the work of Bombieri [Bom76]:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Lambda \cdot \log ^{2}=\mu * \log ^{3}-3\left(\mu * \log ^{2} * \Lambda_{\leq V}\right)-3(\Lambda \cdot \log ) * \Lambda_{>V}+F_{3, V}, \tag{1.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $F_{3, V}=-\Lambda_{>V} * \Lambda * \Lambda+2\left(\Lambda_{\leq V} * \Lambda * \Lambda\right)$. For $n=n_{1} n_{2} n_{3}$, with $n_{1}<n_{2}<n_{3}$ and $V^{3}<n$, we have

$$
F_{3, V}(n)=\Lambda\left(n_{1}\right) \Lambda\left(n_{2}\right) \Lambda\left(n_{3}\right) \cdot \begin{cases}-6, & \text { if all } n_{i}>V \\ 6, & n_{1}<n_{2}<V<n_{3} \\ 0, & n_{1}<V<n_{2}<n_{3} \\ 12, & \text { if all } n_{i} \leq V\end{cases}
$$

We have two more small parameters that occur as we further split the second and third terms in (1.5) to separately deal with the contribution from the tail.

Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\eta, 2}(\alpha, x)=\sum_{n \text { odd }} \Lambda(n)(\log n)^{2} \eta(n / x) e(n \alpha) . \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the identity (1.5), this decomposes into

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\eta, 2}(\alpha, x)=S_{I, 1, \eta}-3 S_{I, 2, \eta}-3 S_{I I, \eta}+S_{3, \eta}, \tag{1.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
S_{I, 1, \eta} & =\sum_{m \text { odd }} \mu(m) \sum_{n \text { odd }} \log ^{3} n e(m n \alpha) \eta(m n / x) \\
S_{I, 2, \eta} & =\sum_{\substack{l \leq V \\
l \text { odd }}} \Lambda(l) \sum_{m \text { odd }} \mu(m) \sum_{n \text { odd }} \log ^{2} n e(l m n \alpha) \eta(l m n / x)  \tag{1.8}\\
S_{I I, \eta} & =\sum_{m \text { odd }}(\Lambda \cdot \log )(m) \sum_{\substack{n>V \\
n \text { odd }}} \Lambda(n) e(m n \alpha) \eta(m n / x) \\
S_{3, \eta} & =\sum_{n \text { odd }} F_{3, V}(n) e(n \alpha) \eta(n / x)
\end{align*}
$$

The trivial bound for $S_{\eta, 2}(\alpha, x)$ is of the order $x \log ^{2} x$. Using (1.5), we are likely to obtain a bound of the form

$$
\left|S_{\eta, 2}(\alpha, x)\right| \leq C_{1} x+C_{2} x \log V+\frac{C_{3}(r) x \log ^{2} x}{\sqrt{r}}+C_{4} x^{\theta}
$$

where $\theta<1$. In the above bound, there are terms proportional to $x$ and $x \log V$. These terms are quite large, and just better than the trivial bound. Therefore, it becomes important to get the smallest possible constants here. The source of such terms is $S_{I, 1, \eta}, S_{I, 2, \eta}$ and the tail of $S_{I I, \eta}$ and $S_{3, \eta}$.

Terms in such a decompositions can be classified into two types, namely the type- $I$ and type-II sums. In type-I sums, the sum over one of the variables $m$ and $n$ consists of a nice function (like logarithm), which allows some cancellation in the exponential sum. For instance, the sums $S_{I, 1, \eta}$ and $S_{I, 2, \eta}$ are type-I sums. In type-II
sums, one cannot obtain a cancellation directly by summing over one variable. We may need to apply the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality followed by an application of the large sieve inequality.

### 1.3 Choice of smoothing functions

Now, we mention the type of smoothing functions we will work with. We deal with separate smoothing functions in the type-I and type-II sums. They will be normalized so that their $L^{1}$-norm is 1 .

In the type-I sums, we work with a general smoothing $\eta$, but our aim is to apply the bounds with the following function:

Definition 1.2. Let $\eta_{0}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow[0, \infty)$ be defined by:

$$
\eta_{0}(t)= \begin{cases}70 t(1-t)^{5}\left(1-3 t+4 t^{2}+t^{3} / 2\right), & t \in[0,1]  \tag{1.9}\\ 0, & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

Then $\eta_{0}$ is non-negative, differentiable on $[0,1]$ and twice differentiable in $(0,1]$. It also satisfies $\left|\eta_{0}\right|_{1}=1$ and $\eta_{0}(0)=\eta_{0}(1)=\eta_{0}^{\prime}(1)=0$.

This choice of the above smoothing is purely for numerical reasons, as calculations done on a program have suggested that certain important quantities stay small under this choice. This is certainly not an optimal choice.

In the type-II sums, we work with the same smoothing $\eta_{2}$ as chosen by Helfgott and Tao. It is defined as follows:

Definition 1.3. Let $\eta_{2}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow[0, \infty)$ be defined by

$$
\eta_{2}(x)=4 \int_{0}^{\infty} 1_{[1 / 2,1]}(t) 1_{[1 / 2,1]}(x / t) \frac{d t}{t}=4 \begin{cases}\log 4 x, & x \in(1 / 4,1 / 2)  \tag{1.10}\\ \log 1 / x, & x \in(1 / 2,1) \\ 0, & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

One of the main advantage is that it allows the bilinear sum to be decomposed dyadically in the two variables, which will be evident when we discuss these sums in Chapter 3.

## Chapter 2

## Type-I sums

In this chapter, we prove results for the type-I sums. We work with a smoothing function $\eta$ satisfying some general conditions, but our aim is to apply it to the function $\eta_{0}$ defined in (1.9).

The main result of this chapter broadly follows the approach of Helfgott's, but with certain modifications and differences to adapt the arguments in the current setting. We have done some of the calculations in the appendix.

### 2.1 Smoothing functions and hypothesis

We begin with some general hypothesis on the smoothing function $\eta$.

Definition 2.1 (General conditions on $\eta$ ). Let $\eta: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function satisfying the following conditions:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \eta \geq 0, \quad \operatorname{Supp}(\eta) \subseteq[0,1], \quad \eta \in C^{2}(0,1),  \tag{C1}\\
& |\eta|_{1}=1 \quad \text { and } \quad \eta(0)=\eta(1)=\eta^{\prime}(1)=0,
\end{align*}
$$

where $\operatorname{Supp}(f)$ denotes the support of $f$ and $C^{k}(I)$ denotes functions $k$ times dif-
ferentiable in $I$ with a continuous $k^{\text {th }}$ derivative.

Henceforth, $\eta$ is a function satisfying (C1). The advantage of taking $\eta$ over $\eta_{2}$ in (1.10) is that it is twice differentiable and there the $L^{1}$-norms are comparitively smaller to that of $\eta_{2}$.

Definition 2.2. Let $\eta: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfy (C1). Then for $u_{0} \geq 3$ and $y>u_{0}$, define

$$
\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}(t)= \begin{cases}\eta(t)(\log y t)^{k}, & t>u_{0} / y  \tag{2.1}\\ 0, & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

It can be seen that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widehat{\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}}(t)=\sum_{l=0}^{k}\binom{k}{l}(\log y)^{l}\left(\eta_{(y), 0, u_{0}} \cdot \log ^{k-l}\right)(t), \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{f}$ denotes the Fourier transform of $f$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{f}(t)=\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x) e(-x t) d x \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

For functions that are $C^{1}$ except for a finite number of points, we define (following Helfgott and Tao) the $L^{1}$ norms in terms of their total variation.

Definition 2.3 ( $L^{1}$-norm as a total variation). Let $f:[a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be $C^{1}$ except for the set of points $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$. We define $\left|f^{\prime}\right|_{1}$ to be the total variation of $f$. In particular,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|f^{\prime}\right|_{1}=\int_{a}^{b}\left|f^{\prime}(t)\right| d t+\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left|f\left(x_{j}^{+}\right)-f\left(x_{j}^{-}\right)\right| . \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

This coincides with the usual definition if $f$ were $C^{1}$ in all of $[a, b]$. We can similarly define $\left|f^{(k)}\right|_{1}$ for $k \geq 2$.

Hypothesis 2.4. We assume that there are non-negative functions which act as
upper bounds for the the $L^{1}$-norms of $\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}$ and its derivatives. In particular,

$$
\begin{align*}
\left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}\right|_{1} & \leq P_{0, k, u_{0}}(\log y), \\
\left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime}\right|_{1} & \leq P_{1, k, u_{0}}(\log y),  \tag{H1}\\
\left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1} & \leq P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log y),
\end{align*}
$$

for all $y>u_{0}$. We also define $P_{k, u_{0}}^{(j)}, j=0,2$ as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}:=\sqrt{P_{0, k, u_{0}} \cdot P_{2, k, u_{0}}} \quad \text { and } \quad P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}:=P_{1, k, u_{0}} \sqrt{\frac{P_{2, k, u_{0}}}{P_{0, k, u_{0}}}} . \tag{H2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and assume that

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{j, k, u_{0}}(\log y), \quad P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(\log y) \quad \text { and } \quad P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}(\log y) \quad \text { are increasing for all } y>u_{0} . \tag{H3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Further, assume there are positive constants $C_{j, k, \eta}, j=0,1,2$, such that

$$
\begin{align*}
P_{j, k, u_{0}}(\log y) & =C_{j, k, \eta} \cdot(\log y)^{k}, \quad \text { for all } y>u_{0}  \tag{H4}\\
\text { and } \quad C_{2, k, \eta} & \leq 1000 \cdot C_{1, k, \eta} .
\end{align*}
$$

Consequently, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(\log y)=\sqrt{C_{0, k, \eta} C_{2, k, \eta}} \cdot(\log y)^{k} \quad \text { and } \quad P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}(\log y)=C_{1, k, \eta} \sqrt{\frac{C_{2, k, \eta}}{C_{0, k, \eta}}} \cdot(\log y)^{k} . \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark 2.5. From (H4), it follows that one can assume $P_{j, k, u_{0}}(\log y) / y$ to be decreasing for $y>e^{k}$.

Explicit values for the constants $C_{j, k, \eta}$ (in terms of certain norms involving $\eta$ ) have been computed in Proposition A. 7 in the appendix.

Remark 2.6. Note that $\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}$ and $\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime}$ are not continuous (hence are not differentiable) at $t=u_{0} / y$. So, to evaluate $\left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime}\right|_{1}$ and $\left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1}$ w.r.t. Definition
2.3, we have to add additional contributions (which are jumps of discontinuity at $\left.u_{0} / y\right)$

$$
\left|\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k}\right| \quad \text { and } \quad\left|\eta^{\prime}\left(u_{0} / y\right)\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k}+k\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k-1} \frac{\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)}{u_{0} / y}\right|
$$

respectively to the integral from $u_{0} / y$ to 1 .

Definition 2.7. For all integers $l \geq 0$ and $\eta$ satisfying (C1), we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{\eta, l}=\left|\eta \cdot \log ^{l}\right|_{1}, \quad c_{\eta, l}^{\prime}=\left|\left(\eta \cdot \log ^{l}\right)^{\prime}\right|_{1} \quad \text { and } \quad b_{\eta, l}=\max \left\{2 c_{\eta, l} \frac{c_{\eta, l}^{\prime}}{5 \pi}\right\} . \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then for any $\delta \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\delta_{0}=\max \{2,|\delta| / 5\}$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\min \left\{c_{\eta, l}, \frac{c_{\eta, l}^{\prime}}{\pi|\delta|}\right\} \leq \frac{b_{\eta, l}}{\delta_{0}} \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Definition 2.8. Let $l>-1$ be a real number and suppose $F: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
F \geq 0, \quad F \in C^{1}\left(x_{0}, \infty\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \int_{x_{0}}^{\infty} e^{-(l+1) t} F(t)<\infty, \quad \text { where } x_{0}>0 \tag{C2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then for $x>x_{0}$, define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(T^{l} F\right)(x)=\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-t(l+1)} F(x+t) d t \tag{2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 2.2 The main result

Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$ and $Q_{0}>1$ be given. By Dirichlet approximation, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 \alpha=a / q+\delta / x, \quad|\delta / x| \leq 1 / q Q_{0}, \quad(a, q)=1 \quad \text { and } \quad q \leq Q_{0}, \tag{AP1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and assume $q$ to be the smallest possible. Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta_{0}=\delta_{0}\left(\alpha, Q_{0}\right)=\max \{2,|\delta| / 5\} \quad \text { and } \quad s=s\left(\alpha, Q_{0}\right)=\delta_{0} q . \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{0}=\min \left\{s, \frac{x}{5 Q_{0}}\right\} . \tag{2.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Our aim is to bound the following sum:

Definition 2.9. Let $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ be an arithmetic function and let $x \geq 1$. Suppose $3 \leq u_{0} \leq s_{0}$ and $\eta$ satisfies (C1). For $k=1,2,3$, we consider the sum

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\eta, k, f}(\alpha, x)=\sum_{\substack{m<x / u_{0} \\ m \text { odd }}} f(m) \sum_{\substack{n>u_{0} \\ n \text { odd }}}(\log n)^{k} e(m n \alpha) \eta(m n / x) . \tag{2.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark 2.10. The condition $m<x / u_{0}$ above is forced upon by the fact that $\eta$ is supported in $[0,1]$ and that $n>u_{0}$.

In the next theorem, we prove the main type-I bound for the sum $S_{\eta, k, f}$ with the assumption of the certain reasonable hypothesis we have given earlier. We prove the following bound for $S_{\eta, k, f}(\alpha, x)$.

Theorem 2.11 (Type I bound). Let $x \geq 10^{18}$ and $Q_{0}$ be a given parameter. Let $\alpha$ be as in (AP1) and $s, s_{0}$ be as in (2.9), (2.10) with $s \geq s_{0} \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$. Let $\eta$ be as in (C1) and $S_{\eta, k, f}(\alpha, x)$ be as in (2.11) with $k \in\{1,2,3\}$. Suppose that (H1), (H2), (H3) and (H4) hold. Also, assume $q \leq \sqrt{x / 5}$ and that

$$
\begin{align*}
3 & \leq u_{0} \leq s_{0}, \\
\sqrt{x / 5} & \leq Q_{0} \leq x / 10^{6},  \tag{H5}\\
|f(m)| & \leq \kappa, \quad \text { for all } m \leq x .
\end{align*}
$$

Then with $P_{j, k, u_{0}}, P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}$ and $P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}$ in (H1) and (H2), $T^{l}$ as in (2.8), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|S_{\eta, k, f}(\alpha, x)\right| \leq x \kappa\left(\frac{T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)}{\pi u_{0}}+\frac{T^{1} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)}{2 \pi u_{0}^{2}}+L_{k}(s)\right)+R_{k, q}(s, x, f), \tag{2.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{k}(s)=A_{k}+\frac{B_{k}(\log 10 s)^{k+1}}{s} \tag{2.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{k}=0.002 C_{0, k, \eta}+0.00003 C_{1, k, \eta}+10^{-6} C_{2, k, \eta}, \\
& B_{k}=0.108 \sqrt{C_{0, k, \eta} C_{2, k, \eta}}+0.002 C_{2, k, \eta}+10^{-7} C_{1, k, \eta} \sqrt{\frac{C_{2, k, \eta}}{C_{0, k, \eta}}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Here, $R_{k, q}(s, x, f)$ is a decreasing function of $s$ for $s \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$ and satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\eta, k, q}(s, x, f) \geq \frac{x}{2 s} \sum_{i=0}^{k} \sum_{j=0}^{i}\binom{k}{i}\binom{i}{j} b_{\eta, k-i}(\log 10 s)^{i-j}\left|m_{2 q, j}\left(\frac{x}{10 \delta_{0} q^{2}}, f\right)\right|, \tag{2.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
m_{q, k}(x, f)=\sum_{\substack{m \leq x \\(m, q)=1}} \frac{f(m)}{m}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right)^{k}
$$

and $b_{\eta, l}$ 's are given in (2.6). Furthermore, for $k=1,2,3$, it can be seen that the RHS of (2.12) is decreasing for $s \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$. Explicit expressions for $R_{k, q}$ in the case $\eta=\eta_{0}$ (with $\eta_{0}$ given in (1.2)) are given in Proposition A.11.

In the next corollary, we show that essentially the same result holds even if we relax the condition $q \leq \sqrt{x / 5}$ in Theorem 2.11.

Corollary 2.12. Let $x \geq 10^{18}$ and $\eta$ be as in (C1). Let $Q_{0}$ be a given parameter, $\alpha$ be as in (AP1) and $S_{\eta, k, f}$ be as in (2.11) with $k \in\{1,2,3\}$. Suppose that (H1), (H2), (H3), (H4) and (H5) hold and $s \geq s_{0} \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$ be as in (2.9) and (2.10).

Then, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|S_{\eta, k, f}(\alpha, x)\right| \leq x \kappa\left(\frac{T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)}{\pi u_{0}}+\frac{T^{1} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)}{2 \pi u_{0}^{2}}+L_{k}\left(s_{0}\right)\right)+R_{k, q}\left(s_{0}, x, f\right) \tag{2.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. We will prove Corollary 2.12 assuming Theorem 2.11. The only difference in the hypothesis from Theorem 2.11 is the condition $q \leq \sqrt{x / 5}$. Consider two cases:

Case (i): $q \leq \sqrt{x / 5}$. In this case, we can directly apply Theorem 2.11 and obtain the bound (2.12) for $S_{\eta, k, f}(\alpha, x)$ in terms of $s$. Since $s \geq s_{0}$ and the RHS of (2.12) is decreasing, we prove (2.15) in this case.

Case (ii): $q>\sqrt{x / 5}$. We let $Q_{0}^{\prime}=\sqrt{x / 5}$. Using the parameter $Q_{0}^{\prime}$, we seek another Dirichlet approximation for $2 \alpha$, i.e., $2 \alpha=a_{1} / q_{1}+\delta_{1} / x$ with $\left(a_{1}, q_{1}\right)=1$, $q_{1} \leq Q_{0}^{\prime}$ and $\left|\delta_{1}\right| / x \leq 1 / q_{1} Q_{0}^{\prime}$. Then $\left|\delta_{1}\right| / x$ cannot be $O^{*}\left(1 / q_{1} Q_{0}\right)$ (as $q$ was the smallest possible satisfying (AP1) and $q_{1} \leq Q_{0}^{\prime}<q$ ) and therefore

$$
\left|\delta_{1}\right| q_{1} \geq x / Q_{0}
$$

Now, $q_{1} \leq \sqrt{x / 5}$ and $\sqrt{x / 5}=Q_{0}^{\prime} \leq x / 10^{6}$, since $x \geq 10^{18}$. We can now apply Theorem 2.11 with $q_{1}$ in place of $q$ and $Q_{0}^{\prime}$ in place of $Q_{0}$. Letting

$$
s_{1}=s_{1}\left(\alpha, Q_{0}^{\prime}\right)=\max \left\{2, \frac{\left|\delta_{1}\right|}{5}\right\} q_{1} \geq \frac{\left|\delta_{1}\right| q_{1}}{5}>\frac{x}{5 Q_{0}}>1.5 \cdot 10^{5},
$$

we find that $3 \leq u_{0} \leq s_{0} \leq s_{1}$. This leads us to the bound (2.12) with $s$ replaced by $s_{1}$. Since $s_{1}>s_{0}$ and the RHS of (2.12) is decreasing, we prove (2.15).

### 2.3 Preliminary lemmas

In this section, we give some preliminaries for the proof of Theorem 2.11. First, we provide bounds on trigonometric sums.

### 2.3.1 Trigonometric sums

Let $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be compactly supported and piecewise $C^{k}$ except for a finite number of points. From [HH13, Eq (2.1), Pg 32], we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widehat{f}(t)=O^{*}\left(\frac{\left|\widehat{f^{(k)}}\right|_{\infty}}{(2 \pi t)^{k}}\right)=O^{*}\left(\frac{\left|f^{(k)}\right|_{1}}{(2 \pi t)^{k}}\right), \quad \text { for } k \geq 0 \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f^{(k)}$ denotes the $k$-th derivative of $f$ and $\left|f^{(k)}\right|_{1}$ is w.r.t. Definition 2.3.

The following lemma provides cancellations in the trigonometric sums. It is [Tao14, Corollary 3.2] and is implied by a change of variable in [HH13, Eq (2.2), Eq (2.3)].

Theorem 2.13. Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$ and $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be compactly supported and piecewise $C^{2}$. Then

$$
\left|\sum_{n \text { odd }} f(n) e(n \alpha)\right| \leq \frac{1}{2} \min \left\{|f|_{1}+\left|f^{\prime}\right|_{1}, \frac{\left|f^{\prime}\right|_{1}}{|\sin 2 \pi \alpha|}, \frac{\left|f^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1}}{(\sin 2 \pi \alpha)^{2}}\right\} .
$$

Remark 2.14. If in (2.16) and Theorem 2.13, $f$ is $C^{2}$ except for a finite number of points, one can consider $\left|f^{\prime}\right|_{1}$ and $\left|f^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1}$ as total variations of $f$ and $f^{\prime}$, respectively following Definition 2.3.

Remark 2.15. Unlike Helfgott, we do not consider $\left|\widehat{f^{\prime \prime}}\right|_{\infty}$ in the final bound above, but instead use the weaker bound $\left|f^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1}$. This is done in order because of the complications that arise when estimating the Fourier transforms of $\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime}$ and $\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime \prime}$.

Next, we state a lemma from [HH13].

## Lemma 2.16.

(a) Let $\alpha$ be as in (AP1) and $1 \leq y_{1}<y_{2} \leq \frac{x}{2|\delta| q}$ with $y_{2}-y_{1} \leq q$. Then

$$
\sum_{\substack{y_{1}<n \leq y_{2} \\ q \nmid n}} \min \left\{A, \frac{C}{|\sin 2 \pi n \alpha|^{2}}\right\} \leq \frac{20 q^{2}}{3 \pi^{2}} C .
$$

(b) Let $\alpha$ be as in (AP1) and $1 \leq y_{1}<y_{2} \leq \frac{x}{2|\delta| q}$ with $y_{2}-y_{1} \leq q$. Suppose further that $\pi B / e \geq C q$. Then

$$
\left.\sum_{y_{1} \leq n \leq y_{2}}^{q \neq n}\right\} \min \left\{\frac{B}{|\sin 2 \pi n \alpha|}, \frac{C}{|\sin 2 \pi n \alpha|^{2}}\right\} \leq \frac{4 B q}{\pi} .
$$

Proof. Here, (a) is the first bound of [HH13, Lemma 4.1.2], but with $Q_{0} / 2$ replaced by $\frac{x}{2|\delta| q}\left(\geq Q_{0} / 2\right)$, since in the proof, we only need $n|\delta| / x \leq 1 / 2 q$, which is ensured by $y_{2} \leq \frac{x}{2|\delta| q}$.

Part (b) is the first bound of [HH13, Lemma 4.1.3].

Now, we save the factor 2 when the sum runs over odd numbers. Although the saving may seem modest, it is going to play a crucial role when estimating the final sum. The proof of this lemma follows closely to that of [HH13, Lemma 4.1.1].

Lemma 2.17. Let $y \geq 1$ and let $2 \alpha=a / q+O^{*}\left(1 / q^{2}\right)$. Then, we have

$$
\sum_{\substack{y<n \leq y+2 q \\ n \text { odd }}} \min \left\{A, \frac{C}{|\sin 2 \pi n \alpha|^{2}}\right\} \leq 6 A+\frac{4 q}{\pi} \sqrt{A C}
$$

Proof. We can assume that $C \leq A$ since otherwise the trivial bound $A q$ is better than the given bound.

Case (i): $q$ odd. Write $n=m_{0}+2 j$, where $j \in(-q / 2, q / 2]$. Then

$$
2 n \alpha=\left(m_{0}+2 j\right)\left(\frac{a}{q}+O^{*}\left(1 / q^{2}\right)\right)=\frac{2 a j+c}{q}+O^{*}(3 / 2 q) .
$$

Let $r=2 a j+c(\bmod q)$, so that as $j$ varies in $(-q / 2, q / 2]$, $r$ also varies through $(-q / 2, q / 2]$. We bound the terms with $r=0, \pm 1, \pm 2$ by $A$. For terms with $|r| \geq 3$, it follows that $\|2 n \alpha\|=\left\|r / q+O^{*}(3 / 2 q)\right\| \geq|r| / q-3 / 2 q>(|r|-2) / q$. Letting $r^{\prime}=|r|-2$, the given sum is at most

$$
5 A+2 \sum_{1 \leq r^{\prime} \leq q / 4} \min \left\{A, \frac{C}{\sin ^{2} \frac{\pi r^{\prime}}{q}}\right\}
$$

Now, we use the first bound above when $r^{\prime} \leq \frac{q}{\pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}$ and the second bound otherwise. The number of such values of $r^{\prime}$ is at most $\frac{q}{\pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}$. For the terms satisfying $r^{\prime}>\frac{q}{\pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}$, we can replace the sum by an integral (owing to the convexity of $\sin ^{2}$ in $\left.(0, \pi / 2)\right)$. Therefore, this is at most

$$
\begin{gathered}
5 A+2 A\left(\frac{q}{\pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}\right)+2 C \int_{\frac{q}{\pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}}^{q / 4} \frac{1}{\sin ^{2} \frac{\pi t}{q}} d t \\
\leq 5 A+\frac{2 A q}{\pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}+\frac{2 C q}{\pi} \sqrt{\frac{A}{C}-1} \leq 5 A+\frac{4 q}{\pi} \sqrt{A C},
\end{gathered}
$$

where we used the inequality $\sin ^{-1} x+x \sqrt{1-x^{2}} \leq 2 x$, for $0 \leq x \leq 1$.

Case (ii): $q$ even. We consider the sum in an interval of length $q$, i.e., we have

$$
\sum_{\substack{y<n \leq y+q \\ n \text { odd }}} \min \left\{A, \frac{C}{|\sin 2 \pi n \alpha|^{2}}\right\}
$$

As before, write $n=m_{0}+2 j$, with $j$ in $(-q / 4, q / 4]$, so that $2 n \alpha=r / q+O^{*}(1 / q)$, where $r=2 a j+c(\bmod q)$. Let $\rho=c(\bmod 2) \in\{0,1\}$. Then, we can replace $r$ by $2 r-\rho$, with $r$ ranging in $(-q / 4, q / 4]$. Again, bound the terms corresponding to
$r=0, \pm 1$ by $A$. For $|r| \geq 2$, we have $\|2 n \alpha\|=\left\|(2 r-\rho) / q+O^{*}(1 / q)\right\| \geq 2(|r|-1) / q$. Letting $r^{\prime}=|r|-1$, this sum is at most

$$
3 A+2 \sum_{1 \leq r^{\prime} \leq q / 4} \min \left\{A, \frac{C}{\sin ^{2} \frac{2 \pi r^{\prime}}{q}}\right\} .
$$

As before, the first bound is used when $2 r^{\prime} \leq \frac{q}{\pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}$, the number of which is at most $\frac{q}{2 \pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}$. For terms with $2 r^{\prime}>\frac{q}{\pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}$, we replace the sum by an integral, to get

$$
3 A+2 A\left(\frac{q}{2 \pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}\right)+2 C \int_{\frac{q}{2 \pi} \sin ^{-1} \sqrt{C / A}}^{q / 4} \frac{1}{\sin ^{2} \frac{2 \pi t}{q}} d t \leq 3 A+\frac{2 q}{\pi} \sqrt{A C}
$$

as before. Since the result is established for an interval of length $q$, twice this bound holds for an interval of length $2 q$. This completes the proof.

### 2.3.2 Alternate approximation for $\alpha$

We may sometimes want the $q$ obtained in (AP1) to be large. If our $q$ happens to be small, an alternate approximation for $\alpha$ (with a parameter other than $Q_{0}$ ) is sought.

The following lemma can be extracted from the proof of [HH13, Lemma 4.2.1]
Lemma 2.18. Let $2 \alpha=a / q+\delta / x$ in (AP1) with $\delta \neq 0$. Then we can always find an approximation $a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}$, different from $a / q$, such that

$$
2 \alpha=a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}+\delta^{\prime} / x, \quad\left(a^{\prime}, q^{\prime}\right)=1, \quad\left|\delta^{\prime}\right| / x \leq 1 /\left(q^{\prime}\right)^{2} \quad \text { and } \quad \frac{x}{2|\delta| q}<q^{\prime} \leq \frac{2 x}{|\delta| q}
$$

Proof. Let $Q_{1}=x /|\delta| q$. Then, we have $2 \alpha=a / q+O^{*}\left(1 / q Q_{1}\right)$ and $q \leq Q_{1}$ (since $\left.|\delta| / x \leq 1 / q^{2}\right)$. Letting $Q_{2}=2 Q_{1}$, there is an approximation $a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}$, different from $a / q$ such that $2 \alpha=a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}+\delta^{\prime} / x$ with $q^{\prime} \leq Q_{2}$ and $\left|\delta^{\prime}\right| / x \leq 1 / q^{\prime} Q_{2} \leq 1 /\left(q^{\prime}\right)^{2}$. The approximation is different from $a / q$ because $\delta / x$ cannot be $O^{*}\left(1 / q Q_{2}\right)$, because of
the choice of $Q_{1}$. By the triangle inequality, we have

$$
\frac{1}{q q^{\prime}} \leq\left|\frac{a}{q}-\frac{a^{\prime}}{q^{\prime}}\right| \leq \frac{1}{q Q_{1}}+\frac{1}{2 q^{\prime} Q_{1}} .
$$

It then follows that $q^{\prime} \geq Q_{1}-\frac{q}{2}>\frac{Q_{1}}{2}=\frac{x}{2|\delta| q}$. The other bound follows from $q^{\prime} \leq Q_{2}=2 Q_{1}=2 x /|\delta| q$, proving the lemma.

This leads us to the following:

Lemma 2.19. Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$ and $q$ be as obtained in (AP1). Let $\delta_{0}$ be as in (2.9). If $q \leq \sqrt{x / 5}$, there is an approximation

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 \alpha=a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}+\delta^{\prime} / x, \quad\left(a^{\prime}, q^{\prime}\right)=1, \quad\left|\delta^{\prime}\right| / x \leq 1 /\left(q^{\prime}\right)^{2} \quad \text { and } \quad \frac{\delta_{0} q}{2} \leq q^{\prime} \leq \frac{2 x}{5 \delta_{0} q} \tag{AP2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where it is possible that $a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}$ equals $a / q$ obtained in (AP1).

Proof. We consider two cases:

Case (i): $|\delta| \leq 10$. In this case, one has $\delta_{0}=2$ and so we take $a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}=a / q$. Then $q^{\prime}=\delta_{0} q / 2$ and also $q^{\prime}=q \leq x / 5 q=2 x / 5 \delta_{0} q$, since $q \leq \sqrt{x / 5}$ (a hypothesis of Theorem 2.11). We also have $\left|\delta^{\prime}\right| / x=|\delta| / x \leq 1 / q^{2}=1 /\left(q^{\prime}\right)^{2}$.

Case (ii): $|\delta|>10$. In this case, we have $\delta_{0}=|\delta| / 5$. By Lemma 2.18, there is an approximation $a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}$ such that $2 \alpha=a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}+\delta^{\prime} / x$ with $\left|\delta^{\prime}\right| / x \leq 1 /\left(q^{\prime}\right)^{2}$ and

$$
\frac{x}{2|\delta| q} \leq q^{\prime} \leq \frac{2 x}{|\delta| q}=\frac{2 x}{5 \delta_{0} q} .
$$

We now show that $\frac{x}{2|\delta| q} \geq \frac{\delta_{0} q}{2}=\frac{|\delta| q}{10}$. This is equivalent to $|\delta| q \leq \sqrt{5 x}$, which is true because $|\delta| q \leq x / Q_{0}$ and $Q_{0} \geq \sqrt{x / 5}$ from (H5). This proves the lemma.

### 2.3.3 Other important lemmas

Lemma 2.20. Let $1 \leq Y<X, \rho>0$ and $l>-1$ be real numbers. Suppose that $F: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfies (C2) with $x_{0}=\log \frac{X}{Y}$ and that

$$
\begin{equation*}
F^{\prime}(t) \geq 0 \quad \text { for } t>\log \frac{X}{Y} \tag{C3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{0 \leq m \leq Y-\rho}(m+\rho)^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{m+\rho}\right) \leq & Y^{l+1} T^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{Y}\right)+l^{+} Y^{l} T^{l-1} F\left(\log \frac{X}{Y}\right) \\
& +\rho^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{\rho}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $l^{+}=\max \{l, 0\}$ and $T^{l}$ is as in (2.8), i.e., $\left(T^{l} F\right)(x)=\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-t(l+1)} F(x+t) d t$.
Moreover, for $l=-1$, we have

$$
\sum_{0 \leq m \leq Y-\rho} \frac{1}{m+\rho} F\left(\log \frac{X}{m+\rho}\right) \leq \int_{\log \frac{X}{Y}}^{\log \frac{X}{\rho}} F(t) d t+\rho^{-1} F\left(\log \frac{X}{\rho}\right)
$$

If $\rho=0$ and the range of sum is $1 \leq m \leq Y$, we obtain the same bound by looking at the sum $0 \leq m \leq Y-\rho$ with $\rho=1$ by a change of variable.

Proof. Suppose that $l>-1$. By the Euler summation formula, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{0 \leq m \leq Y-\rho}(m+\rho)^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{m+\rho}\right)= & \int_{0^{-}}^{Y-\rho}(t+\rho)^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{t+\rho}\right) d t \\
& +\int_{0^{-}}^{Y-\rho}\{t\}(t+\rho)^{l-1}\left(l F-F^{\prime}\right)\left(\log \frac{X}{t+\rho}\right) d t \\
& +\rho^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{\rho}\right)-\{Y-\rho\} Y^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{Y}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Bound $\{t\}$ by 1 and ignore $F^{\prime}$ in the second term as $F^{\prime} \geq 0$ (also ignore $l F$ if $l<0$ ) above. Moreover, the negative term on the third line can be ignored, which gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{0 \leq m \leq Y-\rho}(m+\rho)^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{m+\rho}\right) \leq & \int_{\rho}^{Y} t^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{t}\right) d t+l^{+} \int_{\rho}^{Y} t^{l-1} F\left(\log \frac{X}{t}\right) d t \\
& +\rho^{l} F\left(\log \frac{X}{\rho}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $l^{+}=\max \{l, 0\}$. A change of variable $\lambda=\log \frac{Y}{t}$ gives the desired bound.
Now, we consider the case $l=-1$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{0 \leq m \leq Y-\rho}(m+\rho)^{-1} F\left(\log \frac{X}{m+\rho}\right)= & \int_{\rho}^{Y} \frac{F\left(\log \frac{X}{t}\right)}{t} d t-\int_{\rho}^{Y}\{t-\rho\} \frac{\left(F+F^{\prime}\right)\left(\log \frac{X}{t}\right)}{t^{2}} d t \\
& +\rho^{-1} F\left(\log \frac{X}{\rho}\right)-\{Y-\rho\} Y^{-1} F\left(\log \frac{X}{Y}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Ignoring the negative terms and letting $\lambda=\log \frac{X}{t}$, we prove the lemma.

### 2.4 Proof of Theorem 2.11

We have

$$
S_{\eta, k, f}(\alpha, x)=\sum_{\substack{m<x / u_{0} \\ m \text { odd }}} f(m) \sum_{\substack{n>u_{0} \\ n \text { odd }}}(\log n)^{k} e(m n \alpha) \eta(m n / x),
$$

with $\alpha$ as in (AP1). Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
M=\frac{x}{10 \delta_{0} q} . \tag{2.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

We split the sum $S_{\eta, k, f}$ into three parts $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\eta, k, f}=\sum_{\substack{m \leq M \\ q \mid m \\ m \text { odd }}}+\sum_{\substack{m \leq M \\ q \nmid m \\ m \text { odd }}}+\sum_{\substack{M<m<x / u_{0} \\ m \text { odd }}}=S_{1}+S_{2}+S_{3} . \tag{2.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

We write

$$
g_{m}(t)=\eta_{(x / m), k, u_{0}}(m t / x)= \begin{cases}\eta(m t / x)(\log t)^{k}, & \text { if } t>u_{0}  \tag{2.19}\\ 0, & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

by abuse of notation. Then from (H1) (with a change of variable), we have

$$
\left|g_{m}\right|_{1} \leq \frac{x}{m} P_{0, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right), \quad\left|g_{m}^{\prime}\right| \leq P_{1, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right), \quad\left|g_{m}^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1} \leq \frac{m}{x} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right) .
$$

First consider $S_{1}$. We note that $\alpha=a / 2 q+\delta / 2 x+\gamma$, with $\gamma=0$ or $1 / 2$. For the sum over $n$, we note that $q \mid m$, and therefore

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{n \text { odd }} g_{m}(n) e(m n \alpha) & =\sum_{n \text { odd }} g_{m}(n) e\left(m n\left(\frac{a}{2 q}+\frac{\delta}{2 x}+\gamma\right)\right)  \tag{2.20}\\
& =u \sum_{n \text { odd }} g_{m}(n) e\left(\frac{m n \delta}{2 x}\right),
\end{align*}
$$

with $u=e(a / 2+\gamma)$ as both $m, n$ are odd. Also since $(\widehat{\Phi(t) e(t \alpha}))=\widehat{\Phi}(t-\alpha)$ and

$$
\sum_{n \text { odd }} \Phi(n)=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n}(\widehat{\Phi}(n)-\widehat{\Phi}(n+1 / 2))
$$

(2.20) equals

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{u}{2} \sum_{n}\left(\widehat{g_{m}}\left(n-\frac{m \delta}{2 x}\right)-\widehat{g_{m}}\left(n-\frac{m \delta}{2 x}+\frac{1}{2}\right)\right) \\
= & u \frac{x}{2 m} \sum_{n}\left(\eta \widehat{(x / m), k, u_{0}}\left(\frac{x n}{m}-\frac{\delta}{2}\right)-\widehat{\eta_{(x / m), k, u_{0}}}\left(\frac{x n}{m}-\frac{\delta}{2}+\frac{x}{2 m}\right)\right) . \tag{2.21}
\end{align*}
$$

Using (2.16), the second term in (2.21) can be bounded as:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \leq \frac{x}{2 m} \sum_{n}\left|\eta_{(x / m), k, u_{0}}\left(\frac{x n}{m}-\frac{\delta}{2}+\frac{x}{2 m}\right)\right| \leq \frac{x}{2 m} \sum_{n} \frac{\left|\eta_{(x / m), k, u_{0}}^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1}}{(2 \pi)^{2}\left(\frac{x n}{m}-\frac{\delta}{2}+\frac{x}{2 m}\right)^{2}} \\
& \leq \frac{x}{8 \pi^{2} m} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right) \frac{m^{2}}{x^{2}} \sum_{n} \frac{1}{\left(n-\frac{m \delta}{2 x}+\frac{1}{2}\right)^{2}} \\
& \leq \frac{m}{8 \pi^{2} x} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right)\left(16+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{\left(n+\frac{1}{4}\right)^{2}}+\frac{1}{\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{2}}\right)\right) \\
& \leq 0.307 \frac{m}{x} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where we use, in the second line

$$
\left|\frac{m \delta}{2 x}\right| \leq M \cdot \frac{|\delta|}{2 x} \leq \frac{x}{10 \delta_{0} q} \cdot \frac{|\delta|}{2 x} \leq 1 / 4 q \leq 1 / 4
$$

as $M=x / 10 \delta_{0} q$ and $|\delta| \leq 5 \delta_{0}$.

Next, consider the contribution to the first term of (2.21) from $n \neq 0$, which is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \leq \frac{x}{2 m} \sum_{n \neq 0} \frac{\left|\eta_{(x / m), k, u_{0}}^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1}}{(2 \pi)^{2}\left(\frac{x n}{m}-\frac{\delta}{2}\right)^{2}} \leq \frac{x}{8 \pi^{2} m} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right) \frac{m^{2}}{x^{2}} \sum_{n \neq 0} \frac{1}{\left(n-\frac{1}{4}\right)^{2}} \\
& \leq 0.048 \frac{m}{x} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, (2.21) equals

$$
\frac{x}{2 m} u \cdot \eta_{(x / m), k, u_{0}}(-\delta / 2)+O^{*}\left(0.355 \frac{m}{x} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right)\right) .
$$

Summing over $m \leq M, q \mid m$ and $m$ odd and using the bound $|f(m)| \leq \kappa$ in the error term, we get
$\left|S_{1}\right| \leq \frac{x}{2 q}\left|\sum_{\substack{m \leq M / q \\(m, 2 q)=1}} \frac{f(m)}{m} \eta_{(x / m q), k, u_{0}}(-\delta / 2)\right|+O^{*}\left(\frac{0.355 \kappa}{x} \sum_{\substack{m \leq M \\ q \mid m \\ m \text { odd }}} m P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right)\right)$.

By $(2.2),(2.6),(2.7)$ and $(2.16)$, the main term of $(2.22)$ is

$$
\begin{align*}
& \leq \frac{x}{2 q} \sum_{l=0}^{k}\binom{k}{l}\left|\eta \cdot \widehat{\log ^{k-l}}(-\delta / 2)\right|\left|\sum_{\substack{m \leq M / q \\
(m, 2 q)=1}} \frac{f(m)}{m}\left(\log \frac{x}{m q}\right)^{l}\right| \\
& \leq \frac{x}{2 q} \sum_{l=0}^{k}\binom{k}{l} \min \left\{c_{\eta, k-l}, \frac{c_{\eta, k-l}^{\prime}}{\pi|\delta|}\right\}\left|\sum_{\substack{m \leq M / q \\
(m, 2 q)=1}} \frac{f(m)}{m}\left(\log \frac{x}{m q}\right)^{l}\right|  \tag{2.23}\\
& \leq \frac{x}{2 q} \sum_{l=0}^{k}\binom{k}{l} \min \left\{c_{\eta, k-l}, \frac{c_{\eta, k-l}^{\prime}}{\pi|\delta|}\right\} \sum_{l^{\prime}=0}^{l}\binom{l}{l^{\prime}}\left(\log \frac{x}{M}\right)^{l-l^{\prime}}\left|m_{2 q, l^{\prime}}\left(\frac{M}{q}, f\right)\right| \\
& \leq \frac{x}{2 \delta_{0} q} \sum_{l=0}^{k} \sum_{l^{\prime}=0}^{l}\binom{k}{l}\binom{l}{l^{\prime}} b_{\eta, k-l}\left(\log 10 \delta_{0} q\right)^{l-l^{\prime}}\left|m_{2 q, l^{\prime}}\left(\frac{x}{10 \delta_{0} q^{2}}, f\right)\right| .
\end{align*}
$$

It remains to bound the error term of (2.22). This is at most

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{0.355 \kappa M}{x} \sum_{\substack{m \leq M \\
q \mid m}} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right) \leq \frac{0.355 \kappa M}{x} \sum_{1 \leq m \leq M / q} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m q}\right) \\
\leq & \frac{0.355 \kappa M}{x}\left(\frac{M}{q} T^{0} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{M}\right)+P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{q}\right)\right)  \tag{2.24}\\
\leq & \frac{0.355 x \kappa}{10^{2} \delta_{0}^{2} q^{3}} T^{0} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log 10 \delta_{0} q\right)+\frac{0.355 \kappa}{10 \delta_{0} q} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log x),
\end{align*}
$$

where we apply Lemma 2.20 with $F=P_{2, k, u_{0}}, l=0, X=x / q, Y=M / q$ and $\rho=1$. The condition (C3) of Lemma 2.20 holds from (H3) and the fact that $X / Y=x / M=10 \delta_{0} q>u_{0}$ (since $u_{0} \leq \delta_{0} q$ holds from (H5)).

For $S_{2}$, we apply Theorem 2.13 to the $n$-sum with $g_{m}$ as in (2.19). Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
K=\min \left\{\frac{q}{2}, \frac{\rho_{0} x}{q}\right\}, \quad \text { where } \quad \rho_{0}=\frac{\pi}{e} \cdot \frac{C_{1, k, \eta}}{C_{2, k, \eta}} . \tag{2.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then clearly $K \geq 1 / 2$ (since $\rho_{0} \geq 1000 \pi / e$ from (H4) and $q \leq Q_{0} \leq x / 10^{6}$ from (H5)). We now split the $m$-sum into two parts, namely $m \leq K$ and $K<m \leq M$,
and then use $|f(m)| \leq \kappa$ from (H5), to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\left|S_{2}\right|}{\kappa} \leq & \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\substack{m \leq K \\
q \nmid m}} \min \left\{\frac{\left|g_{m}^{\prime}\right|_{1}}{|\sin 2 \pi m \alpha|}, \frac{\left|g_{m}^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1}}{(\sin 2 \pi m \alpha)^{2}}\right\} \\
& +\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\substack{K<m \leq M \\
q \nmid m}} \min \left\{\left|g_{m}\right|_{1}+\left|g_{m}^{\prime}\right|_{1}, \frac{\left|g_{m}^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1}}{(\sin 2 \pi m \alpha)^{2}}\right\}=S_{21}+S_{22} .
\end{aligned}
$$

We first consider $S_{21}$. We use Lemma 2.16 (b) with $\left|g_{m}^{\prime}\right|_{1} \leq P_{1, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right) \leq$ $P_{1, k, u_{0}}(\log x)=B$ and $\left|g_{m}^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1} \leq(x / m)^{-1} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right) \leq(x / K)^{-1} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log x / K)=$ $C$, since $P_{j, k, u_{0}}$ is increasing from (H3) and $P_{j, k, u_{0}}(\log y) / y$ is decreasing from Remark 2.5 (because $x / K \geq 2 x / q \geq 2 \cdot 10^{6}>e^{k}$, for $k=1,2,3$ ). We need to verify $K \leq x / 2|\delta| q$ ( to ensure $y_{2} \leq x / 2|\delta| q$ ), which holds since $K \leq q / 2$ and $q / 2 \leq x / 2|\delta| q$ (as $\left.|\delta| / x \leq 1 / q^{2}\right)$. We also need to verify the condition $\pi B / e \geq C q$, i.e.,

$$
\frac{\pi P_{1, k, u_{0}}(\log x)}{e} \geq \frac{q P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{K}\right)}{x / K} .
$$

By (H4), the above is true if $K \leq x / q \cdot \pi / e \cdot C_{1, k, \eta} / C_{2, k, \eta}=\rho_{0} x / q$, which holds by the definition of $K$. Therefore, from Lemma 2.16 (b), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{21} \leq \frac{2 q}{\pi} P_{1, k, u_{0}}(\log x) \tag{2.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $S_{22}$, it follows from Remark 2.5, that $(m / x) P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right)$ is increasing in $m$
for $m \leq M$ (as $x / m \geq x / M=10 \delta_{0} q \geq 20>e^{k}$, for $k=1,2,3$ ) and therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{22} & \leq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\substack{K<m \leq M \\
q \nmid m}} \min \left\{\frac{x}{m} P_{0, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right)+P_{1, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right), \frac{\frac{m}{x} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right)}{(\sin 2 \pi m \alpha)^{2}}\right\} \\
& \leq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=0}^{M / q-\rho} \sum_{\substack{j q<m-q / 2 \leq(j+1) q \\
q \nmid m}} \min \left\{\frac{x / q}{j+\rho} P_{0, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x / q}{j+\rho}\right)+P_{1, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x / q}{j+\rho}\right),\right. \\
& \left.\frac{\frac{(j+\rho) q}{x} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x / q}{j+\rho}\right)}{(\sin 2 \pi m \alpha)^{2}}\right\},
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\rho=K / q$. We will apply Lemma 2.16(a) to the above sum. The condition $y_{2} \leq x / 2|\delta| q$ is true because $M=\frac{x}{10 \delta_{0 q} q} \leq \frac{x}{2|\delta| q}$. Therefore,

$$
S_{22} \leq \frac{10 q^{3}}{3 \pi^{2} x} \sum_{j=0}^{M / q-\rho}(j+\rho) P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x / q}{j+\rho}\right)
$$

We bound $j+\rho$ by $M / q$ and apply Lemma 2.20 with $F=P_{2, k, u_{0}}, l=0, X=x / q$, $Y=M / q$ and $\rho=K / q$, to obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
S_{22} & \leq \frac{10 q^{2} M}{3 \pi^{2} x}\left(\frac{M}{q} T^{0} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{M}\right)+P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{K}\right)\right)  \tag{2.27}\\
& \leq \frac{x}{60 \pi^{2} \delta_{0} q} T^{0} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log 10 \delta_{0} q\right)+\frac{q}{6 \pi^{2}} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log 2 x) .
\end{align*}
$$

For $S_{3}$, we use the alternate approximation (AP2) for $2 \alpha$, i.e., $2 \alpha=a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}+\delta^{\prime} / x$, where $\delta_{0} q / 2 \leq q^{\prime} \leq 2 x / 5 \delta_{0} q$. Splitting the sum into intervals of length $2 q^{\prime}$, we write

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\frac{S_{3}}{\kappa} \leq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=0}^{\frac{x}{2 u q^{\prime}}-\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}} \sum_{\substack{2 j q^{\prime}<m-M \leq 2(j+1) q^{\prime} \\
m \text { odd }}} \min \left\{\frac{x}{2 q^{\prime}} \frac{P_{0, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M^{\prime}}{2 q^{\prime}}}\right)}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}+P_{1, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}\right),\right. \\
\left.\frac{\frac{(j+1)+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}{x / 2 q^{\prime}} P_{2, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M^{M}}{2 q^{\prime}}}\right)}{(\sin 2 \pi m \alpha)^{2}}\right\} \tag{2.28}
\end{array}
$$

We use Lemma 2.17 to the inner sum and multiply by $1 / 2$. Then it is at most

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{3 x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}} P_{0, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}\right)+3 P_{1, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}\right) \\
& +\frac{2 q^{\prime}}{\pi} \sqrt{\begin{array}{c}
\frac{j+1+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}\left(P_{0, k, u_{0}} \cdot P_{2, k, u_{0}}\right)\left(\log \frac{x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}\right) \\
+\frac{2 q^{\prime}}{x}\left(j+1+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}\right)\left(P_{1, k, u_{0}} \cdot P_{2, k, u_{0}}\right)\left(\log \frac{x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}\right)
\end{array}}  \tag{2.29}\\
& =S_{31}+S_{32} .
\end{align*}
$$

First we deal with $S_{31}$ (first line of (2.29)). To sum $S_{31}$ over $j$, apply Lemma 2.20 to both the terms with $F=P_{0, k, u_{0}}, l=-1$ and $F=P_{1, k, u_{0}}, l=0$, respectively and with $X=x / 2 q^{\prime}, Y=x / 2 u_{0} q^{\prime}$ and $\rho=M / 2 q^{\prime}$, to obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
S_{31} \leq & \frac{3 x}{2 q^{\prime}}\left(\int_{\log u_{0}}^{\log \frac{x}{M}} P_{0, k, u_{0}}(t) d t+\frac{2 q^{\prime}}{M} P_{0, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{M}\right)\right) \\
& +3\left(\frac{x}{2 u_{0} q^{\prime}} T^{0} P_{1, k, u_{0}}\left(\log u_{0}\right)+P_{1, k, u_{0}}\left(\log \frac{x}{q^{\prime}}\right)\right)  \tag{2.30}\\
\leq & \frac{3 x}{\delta_{0} q}\left(\int_{\log u_{0}}^{\log 10 \delta_{0} q} P_{0, k, u_{0}}(t) d t+\frac{1}{u_{0}} T^{0} P_{1, k, u_{0}}\left(\log u_{0}\right)\right) \\
& +30 \delta_{0} q P_{0, k, u_{0}}\left(\log 10 \delta_{0} q\right)+3 P_{1, k, u_{0}}(\log x)
\end{align*}
$$

where we substitute $M=x / 10 \delta_{0} q$ and use $q^{\prime} \geq \delta_{0} q / 2$.
We now bound $S_{32}$. By using $\sqrt{A+B} \leq \sqrt{A}+\frac{B}{2 \sqrt{A}}, S_{32}$ without the $j$-sum is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{2 q^{\prime}}{\pi} \sqrt{\frac{j+1+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log \frac{x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}\right)+\frac{2\left(q^{\prime}\right)^{2}}{\pi x}\left(j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}+1\right) P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log \frac{x / 2 q^{\prime}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}\right), \tag{2.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\sqrt{P_{0, k, u_{0}} P_{1, k, u_{0}}}=P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}$ and $P_{1, k, u_{0}} \sqrt{P_{2, k, u_{0}} / P_{0, k, u_{0}}}=P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}$ from (H2).

To sum the first term of (2.31) over $j$, we use the inequality $\sqrt{\frac{j+1+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}} \leq 1+\frac{1 / 2}{j+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}}$ and apply Lemma 2.20 with $F=P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}$ and $l=0$ and $l=-1$, respectively to the two terms with $X=x / 2 q^{\prime}, Y=x / 2 u_{0} q^{\prime}$ and $\rho=M / 2 q^{\prime}$. Then it is at most

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{2 q^{\prime}}{\pi}\left(\frac{x}{2 u_{0} q^{\prime}} T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)+P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log 10 \delta_{0} q\right)\right) \\
& \quad+\frac{q^{\prime}}{\pi}\left(\int_{\log u_{0}}^{\log 10 \delta_{0} q} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(t) d t+\frac{2 q^{\prime}}{M} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log 10 \delta_{0} q\right)\right)  \tag{2.32}\\
& \leq \frac{x}{\pi u_{0}} T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)+\frac{x}{10 \pi \delta_{0} q}\left(40 P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log 10 \delta_{0} q\right)+\int_{\log u_{0}}^{\log 10 \delta_{0} q} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(t) d t\right)
\end{align*}
$$

where we used $q^{\prime} \leq 4 M$ and $M=x / 10 \delta_{0} q$.
To sum the second term of (2.31), apply Lemma 2.20 with $F=P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}$ and $l=1$ and $l=0$, respectively, with $X=x / 2 q^{\prime}, Y=x / 2 u_{0} q^{\prime}$ and $\rho=M / 2 q^{\prime}$. Then, this is

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{2\left(q^{\prime}\right)^{2}}{\pi x}\left(\left(\frac{x}{2 u_{0} q^{\prime}}\right)^{2} T^{1} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)+2\left(\frac{x}{2 u_{0} q^{\prime}}\right) T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)\right. \\
& \left.\quad+\left(1+\frac{M}{2 q^{\prime}}\right) P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log \frac{x}{M}\right)\right) \\
& \leq \frac{x}{2 \pi u_{0}^{2}} T^{1} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)+\frac{4 x}{5 \pi u_{0} \delta_{0} q} T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)+\frac{9 x}{25 \pi\left(\delta_{0} q\right)^{2}} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log 10 \delta_{0} q\right), \tag{2.33}
\end{align*}
$$

From (2.18), (2.22), (2.23), (2.24), (2.26), (2.27), (2.29), (2.30), (2.32), (2.33) and using $q \leq \sqrt{x / 5} \leq Q_{0}$ and observing

$$
\begin{equation*}
1.5 \cdot 10^{5} \leq s=\delta_{0} q \leq \max \left\{2 \sqrt{x / 5}, x / 5 Q_{0}\right\}=2 \sqrt{x / 5} \tag{2.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

gives

$$
\left|S_{\eta, k, f}(\alpha, x)\right| \leq x \kappa\left(\frac{T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)}{\pi u_{0}}+\frac{T^{1} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)}{2 \pi u_{0}^{2}}+L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x)\right)+R_{k, q}(s, x, f),
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x)= & \frac{1}{x}\left(3 P_{1, k, u_{0}}(\log x)+\frac{0.355}{10^{6}} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log x)\right) \\
& +\frac{1}{\sqrt{5 x}}\left(\frac{2}{\pi} P_{1, k, u_{0}}(\log x)+\frac{1}{6 \pi^{2}} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log 2 x)+60 P_{0, k, u_{0}}(\log x)\right) \\
+ & \frac{1}{s}\left(\frac{4}{\pi} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(\log 10 s)+\frac{1}{10 \pi} \int_{\log u_{0}}^{\log 10 s} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(t) d t+\frac{4}{5 \pi u_{0}} T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)\right. \\
& \left.+\frac{1}{60 \pi^{2}} T^{0} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log 10 s)\right) \\
+ & \frac{1}{s^{2}}\left(0.00355 T^{0} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log 10 s)+\frac{9}{25 \pi} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}(\log 10 s)\right) . \tag{2.35}
\end{align*}
$$

and $R_{\eta, k, q}$ is as in (2.14), i.e.,

$$
R_{\eta, k, q}(s, x, f) \geq \frac{x}{2 s} \sum_{i=0}^{k} \sum_{j=0}^{i}\binom{k}{i}\binom{i}{j} b_{k-i}(\log 10 s)^{i-j}\left|m_{2 q, j}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, f\right)\right| .
$$

The simplified bound (2.13) for $L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x)$ is now obtained from Proposition A. 9 (we remove the dependence on $x$ ), with the constants $A_{k}$ and $B_{k}$ being explicitly determined therein.

This completes the proof of Theorem 2.11.

## Chapter 3

## Type-II sums

In this chapter, we discuss different versions of the large sieve inequality to bound the type-II sums, which take the form of bilinear exponential sums. We use some of the standard results on the large sieve inequality, which includes the version for prime support. We also make use of certain combinatorial results, where the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem plays a central role.

### 3.1 The bilinear exponential sum

Definition 3.1. Let $\left\{a_{n}\right\}_{n \geq 1},\left\{b_{m}\right\}_{m \geq 1}$ be sequences of complex numbers and let $I$ and $J$ be intervals. A typical sum we consider takes the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\eta_{2}}(I, J, \alpha)=\sum_{m \in I} \sum_{n \in J} a_{n} b_{m} e(m n \alpha) \eta_{2}(m n / x), \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\eta_{2}:[0,1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is defined by (1.10), i.e.,

$$
\eta_{2}(x)=4 \int_{0}^{\infty} 1_{[1 / 2,1]}(t) 1_{[1 / 2,1]}(x / t) \frac{d t}{t}=4 \begin{cases}\log 4 x, & x \in(1 / 4,1 / 2)  \tag{3.2}\\ \log \frac{1}{x}, & x \in(1 / 2,1) \\ 0, & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

This is the same smoothing as chosen by Helfgott [HH13] and Tao [Tao14]. One of the main advantages is that it allows us to break the bilinear sum dyadically in the variables $m$ and $n$, making it easier to apply the large sieve inequalities. In particular,

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{\eta_{2}}(I, J, \alpha) & =4 \sum_{m \in I} \sum_{n \in J} a_{n} b_{m} e(m n \alpha) \int_{0}^{\infty} 1_{[1 / 2,1]}(n W / x) 1_{[1 / 2,1]}(n / W) \frac{d W}{W} \\
& =4 \int_{0}^{1}\left(\sum_{\substack{m \in I \\
m \sim x / W}} \sum_{\substack{n \in J \\
n \sim W}} a_{n} b_{m} e(m n \alpha)\right) \frac{d W}{W}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $m \sim x$ means $x / 2<m \leq x$. It is therefore enough to consider sums

$$
\begin{equation*}
S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha):=\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} \sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} a_{n} b_{m} e(m n \alpha), \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{M}$ and $\mathcal{N}$ are intervals satisfying:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{M} \subseteq[M, 2 M], \quad \mathcal{N} \subseteq[N, 2 N] \quad \text { and } \quad M N=x / 4 \tag{H6}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some $M, N \geq 1$. We denote by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|\boldsymbol{a}\|:=\left(\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}\right)^{1 / 2} \quad \text { and } \quad\|\boldsymbol{b}\|:=\left(\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}}\left|b_{m}\right|^{2}\right)^{1 / 2} . \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

We consider (3.3) under different cases depending upon the support of the sequences $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ and $\left\{b_{m}\right\}$, namely (i) when both sequences are supported on odd numbers, (ii)
when one is supported on primes and the other on odd numbers and (iii) when both sequences are supported on the primes.

Various results for (i) and (ii) are present in [HH13, Proposition 5.2.4]. We give bounds of similar nature and will include their proofs. In addition, we prove a few variations in Theorem 3.4, allowing us to obtain better constants in the tail of $S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)$, i.e., when one of $M$ and $N$ is large and the other small. For (iii), we prove two versions in Proposition 3.16, which lead to Theorem 3.3.

Let $Q_{0}>0$ be a given parameter. By Dirichlet's theorem we have an approximation

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 \alpha=a / q+\delta / x, \quad|\delta| / x \leq 1 / q Q_{0}, \quad(a, q)=1, \quad q \leq Q_{0} \tag{AP3}
\end{equation*}
$$

and let $q$ be the smallest possible. As in Chapter 2, we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta_{0}=\delta_{0}\left(\alpha, Q_{0}\right)=\max \{2,|\delta| / 5\} . \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

By the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
|S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)| \leq\|\boldsymbol{b}\|\left(\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2}\right)^{1 / 2} \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The second quantity in the above product is estimated by application of a large sieve inequality, which provides a bound of the form

$$
\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq \Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}) \cdot\|\boldsymbol{a}\|^{2}
$$

for some constant $\Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})$ depending only on $\mathcal{M}$ and $\mathcal{N}$. Therefore,

$$
\begin{equation*}
|S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)| \leq \Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})^{1 / 2}\|\boldsymbol{a}\| \cdot\|\boldsymbol{b}\| . \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 3.2 Main results

We now list the main results of this chapter. As was the case in [HH13], our bounds become better as $\delta$ becomes larger.

First, we state the version when one of $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ and $\left\{b_{m}\right\}$ supported on odd numbers.

Theorem 3.2. Let $\alpha$ be as in (AP3) and $\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}$ be as in (H6). Let $\left\{a_{n}\right\},\left\{b_{m}\right\}$ be sequences of complex numbers with $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ supported on the odd numbers and assume one of the following holds:
(i) $|\delta| \leq 10$ and $|\delta| / x \leq 1 / 2 q^{2}$, or
(ii) $|\delta| \geq 10$ and $M+q \leq x /|\delta| q$.

Then

$$
|S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)| \leq\left(\frac{N}{2}+2 M+\delta_{0} q+\frac{x}{4 \delta_{0} q}\right)^{1 / 2}\|\boldsymbol{a}\| \cdot\|\boldsymbol{b}\|
$$

Let $F_{0}$ be an increasing function that satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \leq F_{0}(x), \quad \text { for all } x \geq \max \{3, q\} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

An explicit choice for $F_{0}$ is given in Lemma A.5.

Next, we consider the case when both $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ and $\left\{b_{m}\right\}$ are supported on primes. In this case, we save two logarithmic factors.

Theorem 3.3. Let $\alpha$ be as in (AP3) and $\delta_{0}=\max \{2,|\delta| / 5\}$ be as in (3.5). Let $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ and $\left\{b_{m}\right\}$ be sequences supported on the primes and $\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}$ satisfy (H6). If

$$
7 \delta_{0} q<N \leq x / 440 \delta_{0} q \quad\left(\text { so that } 110 \delta_{0} q \leq M \leq x / 28 \delta_{0} q\right)
$$

then

$$
\begin{equation*}
|S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)| \leq\left(\frac{x F_{0}\left(\delta_{0} q\right)^{2}}{\delta_{0} q \log \frac{M}{10 \delta_{0} q} \log \frac{N}{\delta_{0} q}}\right)^{1 / 2}\|\boldsymbol{a}\| \cdot\|\boldsymbol{b}\| \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $F_{0}$ is as in (3.8).

The next result is a variant of the case when one variable is supported on the primes. It is useful in saving a constant in the tail of $S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)$. We are able to save a factor close to 2 over the standard large sieve for primes.

Theorem 3.4. Let $75 \sqrt{x} \leq Q_{0}<x / 1000$, $\alpha$ be as in (AP3) and $\delta_{0}$ be as in (3.5). Let $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ be supported on the odd numbers and $\left\{b_{m}\right\}$ be supported on the primes. Let $\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}$ be as in (H6) and $F_{0}$ be as in (3.8). Then
(a) If $q \leq x / 10 Q_{0}$ and $M \geq x / 28 \delta_{0} q$ (so that $N \leq 7 \delta_{0} q$ ), then

$$
|S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)| \leq\left(\frac{5 M}{9}+\frac{8.2 x}{\delta_{0} q}\right)^{1 / 2}\left(\frac{F_{0}\left(15 \delta_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{x}{448\left(\delta_{0} q\right)^{2}}}\right)^{1 / 2}\|\boldsymbol{a}\| \cdot\|\boldsymbol{b}\| .
$$

(b) If $x / 10 Q_{0}<q \leq Q_{0} / 100$, we have

$$
|S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)| \leq\left(\frac{5 M}{9}+\frac{4.06 x}{q}\right)^{1 / 2}\left(\frac{F_{0}(30 q)}{\log \frac{Q_{0}}{25 q}}\right)^{1 / 2}\|\boldsymbol{a}\| \cdot\|\boldsymbol{b}\| .
$$

(c) If $M \geq 200 Q_{0}$, we have

$$
|S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)| \leq e^{\pi|\delta|}\left(\frac{8 M}{15}+\frac{2 x}{q}\right)^{1 / 2}\left(\frac{F_{0}(30 q)}{\log \frac{M}{q}}\right)^{1 / 2}\|\boldsymbol{a}\| \cdot\|\boldsymbol{b}\| .
$$

Remark 3.5. The standard large sieve for primes on the $m$-variable would have given the factor $(2+\epsilon) M$ instead of $5 M / 9$ or $8 M / 15$ in the above scenario, although with $F_{0}(q)$ instead of $F_{0}(30 q)$ (which does not make much difference since $F_{0}(x)$ is of the order $\log \log x)$.

### 3.3 Preliminaries

We now give a background and list the known results on the large sieve inequality, including the large sieve for primes. We will provide the proofs in some cases. In a later section, we will discuss some combinatorial results which will aid the proof of Theorems 3.3 and 3.4.

### 3.3.1 Large sieve inequality

Definition 3.6. For any $x \in \mathbb{R}$, define $\|x\|$ to be the distance of $x$ to the nearest integer, or the norm in $\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$. More precisely, let

$$
\|x\|:=\min \{|x-n|: n \in \mathbb{Z}\} .
$$

Definition 3.7. A set of points $\left\{\alpha_{r}\right\}_{r \in \mathcal{R}}$ in $\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$ is said to be well-spaced if there is a $\delta>0$, such that

$$
\left\|\alpha_{r}-\alpha_{s}\right\| \geq \delta, \quad \text { for all } r \neq s
$$

They are alternatively called a set of $\delta$-spaced points.

Given a set of $\delta$-spaced points $\left\{\alpha_{r}\right\}_{r \in \mathcal{R}}$, the large sieve problem asks for a bound of the form

$$
\sum_{r \in \mathcal{R}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n \alpha_{r}\right)\right|^{2} \leq \Delta(\mathcal{R}, \mathcal{N}) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2},
$$

for a suitable quantity $\Delta(\mathcal{R}, \mathcal{N})$ depending only on the sets $\mathcal{R}$ and $\mathcal{N}$. The large sieve inequality answers this question with $\Delta(\mathcal{R}, \mathcal{N})=N+\delta^{-1}$.

Theorem 3.8 (Large-sieve inequality). Let $\left\{\alpha_{r}\right\}_{r \in \mathcal{R}}$ be a set of $\delta$-spaced points in $\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$ and $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ be a sequence of complex numbers. Let $\mathcal{N}$ be an interval length at
most $N$. Then

$$
\sum_{r \in \mathcal{R}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n \alpha_{r}\right)\right|^{2} \leq\left(N+\delta^{-1}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

Proof. For integer $N$, see Iwaniec-Kowalski [IK04, Theorem 7.7] (with $N+\delta^{-1}-1$ instead of $N+\delta^{-1}$ ), Montgomery-Vaughan [MV73, Theorem 1] or Richert [RS76, Theorem 2.3]. When $N$ is not an integer, $N$ is replaced by $N+1$ (as there are most $N+1$ integers in $\mathcal{N})$, which gives the factor $\left(N+1+\delta^{-1}-1\right)$, giving the required bound.

Theorem 3.9 (Weighted large sieve inequality). Let $\left\{\alpha_{r}\right\}_{r \in \mathcal{R}}$ be a set of points in $\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$ and let

$$
\delta_{r}=\min _{\substack{s \in \mathcal{R} \\ s \neq r}}\left\|\alpha_{r}-\alpha_{s}\right\| .
$$

Let $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ be a sequence of complex numbers and $\mathcal{N}$ be an interval of length at most $N$. Then

$$
\sum_{r \in \mathcal{R}}\left(N+1+3 / 2 \cdot \delta_{r}^{-1}\right)^{-1}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n \alpha_{r}\right)\right|^{2} \leq \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

Proof. When $N$ is an integer, this holds (without the 1) due to MontgomeryVaughan [MV73, Theorem 1] and Richert [RS76, Theorem 2.4]. Again, when $N$ is not a integer, $N$ is replaced by $N+1$, which gives the required version.

### 3.3.2 Large sieve inequality for primes

In this section, we discuss the large sieve inequalities for primes. We begin with Montgomery's inequality from [Mon68].

Lemma 3.10 (Montgomery's inequality). Let $r$ be a squarefree positive integer and let $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ be supported on integers coprime to $r$. If $S(\alpha)=\sum_{n<N} a_{n} e(n \alpha)$, we have

$$
\frac{1}{\varphi(r)}|S(0)|^{2} \leq \sum_{a(\bmod r)}^{*}\left|S\left(\frac{a}{q}\right)\right|^{2}
$$

Now, we obtain large sieve inequalities for the primes by using Montgomery's inequality. Parts (a) and (c) of the next lemma are similar to Lemma [HH13, Lemma 5.2.1] with change of notation. Part (b) is the large sieve for primes and similar to [HH13, Eq (5.4.3)].

Lemma 3.11. Let $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ be a sequence supported on the primes and $\mathcal{N}$ be an interval of length at most $N$. Let $\left\{\alpha_{m}\right\}_{m \in \mathcal{R}}$ be a set of points in $\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$. Let $b_{m} \in \mathbb{Z}, \beta_{m}, \gamma \in \mathbb{R}$, and $0<\theta<1 / 2$ be such that

$$
\alpha_{m}=b_{m} / q+\beta_{m}+\gamma, \quad \text { and } \quad\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right| \leq \theta, \text { for all } m, m^{\prime} \in \mathcal{R}
$$

(a)Suppose $b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q), m \neq m^{\prime}$ implies $\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right| \geq \rho$ (set $\rho=\infty$ if $b_{m}$ 's are distinct modulo q) and let $\phi=\min \{1 / q-\theta, \rho\}$. Then

$$
\sum_{m \in \mathcal{R}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n \alpha_{m}\right)\right|^{2} \leq\left(N+\phi^{-1}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

Here we do not require $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ to be supported in primes.
(b) Suppose $\left\{b_{m}\right\}_{m \in \mathcal{R}}$ are all distinct $(\bmod q)$ and $14 q<N \leq 5 /(4 \theta)$. Then

$$
\sum_{m \in \mathcal{R}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n \alpha_{m}\right)\right|^{2} \leq \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 N}{\log \frac{N}{2 q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

(c) Suppose $b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q), m \neq m^{\prime}$ implies $\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right| \geq \rho$ and that $1 / N q \leq$ $\theta+\rho<1 / q$. Then

$$
\sum_{m \in \mathcal{R}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n \alpha_{m}\right)\right|^{2} \leq \frac{2 q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{1}{\log \frac{1}{q(\theta+\rho)}}\left(N+\rho^{-1}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} .
$$

Proof. For (a), it is seen that for distinct $m, m^{\prime} \in \mathcal{R}$

$$
\left\|\alpha_{m}-\alpha_{m^{\prime}}\right\|=\left\|\left(b_{m}-b_{m^{\prime}}\right) / q+\left(\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right)\right\| \geq \begin{cases}1 / q-\theta, & b_{m} \not \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q) \\ \rho, & b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q)\end{cases}
$$

Letting $\phi=\min \{1 / q-\rho, \rho\}$ and applying the standard large sieve inequality (Theorem 3.8) gives the required bound.

We now prove (b). Since $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ are supported on the primes, Montgomery's inequality gives (with $\left.S(x)=\sum_{n} a_{n} e\left(n\left(\alpha_{m}\right)\right) \cdot e(n x)\right)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mu^{2}(r)}{\varphi(r)}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n \alpha_{m}\right)\right|^{2} \leq \sum_{a^{\prime}(\bmod r)}^{*}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n\left(\alpha_{m}+a^{\prime} / r\right)\right)\right|^{2}, \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $r \leq R \leq \sqrt{N}$ and $(r, q)=1$. Here $R$ is a parameter to be chosen later. Let

$$
\psi\left(m, a^{\prime} / r\right)=\alpha_{m}+a^{\prime} / r .
$$

This is a double-indexed set over $m$ and the fractions $a^{\prime} / r$, with $r \leq R$ and $(r, q)=1$ of elements in $\mathbb{R} / \mathbb{Z}$. Their separation is at least

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\psi\left(m, a^{\prime} / r\right)-\psi\left(m^{\prime}, a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime}\right)\right\| & =\left\|\left(b_{m}-b_{m^{\prime}}\right) / q+\left(\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right)+\left(a^{\prime} / r-a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime}\right)\right\| \\
& \geq \begin{cases}1 / q r R-\theta, & a^{\prime} / r \neq a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime}, m \neq m^{\prime} \\
1 / q-\theta, & a^{\prime} / r=a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime} .\end{cases}
\end{aligned}
$$

Multiply both sides of (3.10) by $\left(N+1+3 / 2(1 / q r R-\theta)^{-1}\right)^{-1}$ and sum over $m \in \mathcal{R}$
and $r \leq R,(r, q)=1$ and use the weighted large sieve (Theorem 3.9), to get

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left(\sum_{\substack{r \leq R \\
(r, q)=1}} \frac{\mu^{2}(r)}{\varphi(r)}\left(N+1+\frac{3}{2}(1 / q r R-\theta)^{-1}\right)^{-1}\right) \sum_{m \in \mathcal{R}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n \alpha_{m}\right)\right|^{2} \\
& \leq \sum_{\substack{r \leq R \\
(r, q)=1}} \sum_{a^{\prime}(\bmod }^{*} \sum_{r)}\left(N+1+\frac{3}{2}(1 / q r R-\theta)^{-1}\right)^{-1}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n\left(\alpha_{m}+a^{\prime} / r\right)\right)\right|^{2} \\
& \leq \sum_{n \in N}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} . \tag{3.11}
\end{align*}
$$

Choose

$$
\begin{equation*}
R=\left(\frac{N}{3 q}\right)^{1 / 2}>2 \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

since $N>14 q$. Now, as $\theta \leq 5 /(4 N)$, we have

$$
\frac{1}{q r R}-\theta \geq \frac{1}{q r R}-\frac{5}{4 N}=\frac{R}{N r}\left(\frac{N}{q R^{2}}-\frac{5 r}{4 R}\right) \geq \frac{R}{N r}(3-5 / 4)=\frac{7 R}{4 N r}
$$

and therefore

$$
N+1+\frac{3}{2}(1 / q r R-\theta)^{-1} \leq N+1+\frac{6 N r}{7 R} \leq N+\frac{N r}{R}+\left(1-\frac{N r}{7 R}\right)<N\left(1+\frac{r}{R}\right) .
$$

This is because $\frac{N r}{7 R} \geq \frac{N}{7 R}=\frac{2 \sqrt{N q}}{7}>\frac{2 \sqrt{14} q}{7}>1$, since $N>14 q$. Therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{\substack{r \leq R \\
(r, q)=1}} \frac{\mu^{2}(r)}{\varphi(r)}\left(N+1+\frac{3}{2}(1 / q r R-\theta)^{-1}\right)^{-1} \\
\geq & \frac{1}{N} \sum_{\substack{r \leq R \\
(r, q)=1}} \frac{\mu^{2}(r)}{\varphi(r)}\left(1+\frac{r}{R}\right)^{-1} \geq \frac{1}{N} \frac{\varphi(q)}{q} \sum_{r \leq R} \frac{\mu^{2}(r)}{\varphi(r)}\left(1+\frac{r}{R}\right)^{-1} \\
\geq & \frac{1}{N} \frac{\varphi(q)}{q}\left(\frac{\log \frac{N}{3 q}}{2}+0.25068\right)>\frac{1}{N} \frac{\varphi(q)}{q} \frac{\log \frac{N}{2 q}}{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

where the inequality $\sum_{r \leq R} \mu^{2}(r) / \varphi(r) \cdot(1+r / R)^{-1} \geq \log R+0.25068$ holds for all
$R \geq 2$ by a lemma of Montgomery-Vaughan [MV73, Lemma 8 ], for $R \geq 100$ and a verification by Helfgott for $2 \leq R<100$. Using this in (3.11), we prove (b).

For (c), Montgomery's inequality gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mu^{2}(r)}{\varphi(r)}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n \alpha_{m}\right)\right|^{2} \leq \sum_{a^{\prime}(\bmod r)}^{*}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e\left(n\left(\alpha_{m}+a^{\prime} / r\right)\right)\right|^{2}, \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $r \leq R<N,(r, q)=1$. Let $\psi\left(m, a^{\prime} / r\right)=\alpha_{m}+a^{\prime} / r$. Similar to the earlier cases, we find that when $\left(m, a^{\prime} / r\right) \neq\left(m^{\prime}, a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime}\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\psi\left(m, a^{\prime} / r\right)-\psi\left(m^{\prime}, a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime}\right)\right\| & =\left\|\frac{b_{m}-b_{m^{\prime}}}{q}+\left(\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right)+a^{\prime} / r-a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime}\right\| \\
& \geq \begin{cases}1 / q R^{2}-\theta, & b_{m} \not \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q), a^{\prime} / r \neq a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime} \\
1 / R^{2}-\theta, & b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q), a^{\prime} / r \neq a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime} \\
\rho, & b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q), a^{\prime} / r=a^{\prime \prime} / r^{\prime}\end{cases} \tag{3.14}
\end{align*}
$$

Let

$$
R^{2}=\frac{1}{q(\theta+\rho)}
$$

The conditions $1 /(N q) \leq \theta+\rho<1 / q$ ensure that $1<R \leq \sqrt{N}$. We find that the first and third quantities in (3.14) have the smallest value $(=\rho$ ). Summing (3.13) over $r$ and applying the large sieve inequality along with the bound

$$
\sum_{\substack{r \leq R \\(r, q)=1}} \frac{\mu^{2}(r)}{\varphi(r)} \geq \frac{\varphi(q)}{q} \log R
$$

we prove (c).

### 3.3.3 Combinatorial lemmas

Now, we discuss some combinatorial results which will be useful in the proof Theorems 3.3 and 3.4.

We first recall the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem from [MV73, Theorem 2].

Theorem 3.12 (Brun-Titchmarsh). Let $q$ be a positive integer and $\mathcal{I}$ be an interval with $|\mathcal{I}|>q$. For any residue class $(a, q)=1$, let $\pi(\mathcal{I}, q, a)$ denote the number of primes in $\mathcal{I}$ congruent to $a(\bmod q)$. Then, we have

$$
\pi(\mathcal{I}, q, a) \leq \frac{2|\mathcal{I}|}{\varphi(q) \log \frac{\mid \mathcal{I}}{q}}
$$

The next lemma provides an upper bound for the maximum number of subsets, the the primes in an interval $\mathcal{I}$ can be partitioned so as to ensure that they satisfy some given properties.

Lemma 3.13. Let $q$ be a positive integer and $\mathcal{I}=(x, x+y)$ be an interval with $x>q$ and $|\mathcal{I}|=y>q$. Then, we have the following:
(a) Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{1}=B_{1}(\mathcal{I}, q)=\frac{2|\mathcal{I}|}{\varphi(q) \log \frac{\mid \mathcal{I}}{q}} . \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then the primes of $\mathcal{I}$ can be partitioned into at most $\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor$ subsets $S_{j}, 1 \leq j \leq$ $\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor$, such that no two primes in $S_{j}$ occupy the same residue class mod $q$.
(b) Let $3<L \leq|\mathcal{I}| / q$ be a given parameter and

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{2}=B_{2}(L, q)=\frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 L}{\log L} . \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then one can partition the primes in $\mathcal{I}$ into at most $\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil$ subsets $S_{j}, 1 \leq j \leq$ $\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil$, such that primes congruent $\bmod q$ in any $S_{j}$ are separated by at least

Lq. More precisely, if $p, p^{\prime}$ are distinct primes in $S_{j}$ satisfying $p \equiv p^{\prime}(\bmod q)$, then $\left|p-p^{\prime}\right| \geq L q$.

Proof. First, we prove (a). We assume that $S_{j}$ 's are empty to begin with and partition the primes of $\mathcal{I}$ in the following manner:

- For any residue class $(a, q)=1$, consider the primes of $\mathcal{I}$ congruent to $a(\bmod q)$, (at most $B_{1}$ in number by the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem). Write them in increasing order as $\left\{p_{1}(a), \ldots, p_{\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor}(a)\right\}$ and place them in different subsets, i.e., put $p_{j}(a)$ in $S_{j}$ for all $j$. It is possible there may not be these many primes.
- Repeat the above step for all coprime residue classes $a(\bmod q)$.

Having done this process, it is clear that in any given $S_{j}$, no two primes can be congruent to the same residue class modulo $q$.

Now, we prove (b). Let $S_{j}$ 's be empty sets to begin with. We do the following:

- Let $(a, q)=1$ be a residue class $(\bmod q)$ and enumerate the primes in $\mathcal{I}$, congruent to $a(\bmod q)$ in the increasing order as $\left\{p_{1}(a), p_{2}(a), \ldots, p_{k}(a)\right\}$. To place $p_{j}(a)$, let $j_{0}=j\left(\bmod \left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil\right) \in\left\{1,2, \ldots,\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil\right\}$ and put $p_{j}(a)$ in $S_{j_{0}}$. In other words, put $p_{1}(a)$ in $S_{1}, p_{2}(a)$ in $S_{2}$, etc., and put $p_{\left[B_{2}\right\rceil+1}$ again in $S_{1}$ and continue this cyclically.
- Repeat the above step for all coprime residue classes $a(\bmod q)$.

Claim: If $p$ and $p^{\prime}$ are distinct primes in $S_{j}$ with $p \equiv p^{\prime}(\bmod q)$, then $\left|p-p^{\prime}\right| \geq L q$.
To prove the claim, first note that since $L>3$, we have $B_{2}>5$, or $\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil \geq 6$. Let $p, p^{\prime}$ be distinct primes in $S_{j}$ satisfying $p \equiv p^{\prime} \equiv a(\bmod q)$, where $(a, q)=1$. It then follows by construction that $p=p_{i}(a)$ and $p^{\prime}=p_{i^{\prime}}(a)$, with $i \equiv i^{\prime}\left(\bmod \left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil\right)$. As $i \neq i^{\prime}$, we have $\left|i-i^{\prime}\right| \geq\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil$ and therefore there are at least $\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil \geq 6$ primes
$(\equiv a(\bmod q))$ in $J=\left(p, p^{\prime}\right]$ (or $\left.\left(p^{\prime}, p\right]\right)$. Write $\left|p-p^{\prime}\right|=h q$, with $h \geq 6$. By the Brun-Titchmarsh theorem, there are at most $\frac{2 h q}{\varphi(q) \log h}$ primes in $J$, which are congruent to $a(\bmod q)$. Therefore

$$
\frac{2 h q}{\varphi(q) \log h} \geq B_{2}=\frac{2 L q}{\varphi(q) \log L}
$$

from which it follows that $h \geq L$ (as $x / \log x$ is increasing for $x \geq e$ ) and hence $\left|p-p^{\prime}\right|=h q \geq L q$. This proves the claim and completes the proof of (b).

This leads to the following extension:

Lemma 3.14. Let $q$ be a positive integer and $\mathcal{I}=(x, x+y)$ be an interval with $x>q$ and $|\mathcal{I}|=y>q$. Let $B_{1}=B_{1}(\mathcal{I}, q)$ and $B_{2}=B_{2}(L, q)$ be as in (3.15) and (3.16), respectively. Then for any $d \mid q$, we have the following:
(a) The primes of $\mathcal{I}$ can be partitioned into at most $\varphi(d)\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor$ subsets $S_{j, i}, 1 \leq j \leq$ $\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor, 1 \leq i \leq \varphi(d)$, such that in any $S_{j, i}$, the primes occupy distinct residue classes $(\bmod q)$ and any two primes are congruent $\bmod d$. When $d=q$, each $S_{j, i}$ has at most one element and the condition holds trivially.
(b) Let $3<L \leq|\mathcal{I}| / q$ be a given parameter. Then the primes of $\mathcal{I}$ can be partitioned into at most $\varphi(d)\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil$ subsets $S_{j, i}, 1 \leq j \leq\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil, 1 \leq i \leq \varphi(d)$ such that in any $S_{j, i}$, distinct primes congruent $\bmod q$ are separated by at least $L q$ and any two primes in $S_{j, i}$ are congruent mod $d$. When $d=q$, any two primes of $S_{j, i}$ are separated by at least $L q$ (as any two are congruent $\bmod q$ ).

Proof. To prove (a), we apply Lemma 3.13 (a) to partition the primes of $\mathcal{I}$ into at most $\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor$ subsets to ensure all primes in any subset $S_{j}$ occupy different residue classes $\bmod q$. Then, we further partition each $S_{j}$ into $\varphi(d)$ subsets $S_{j, i}, 1 \leq i \leq \varphi(d)$ depending on the residue class mod $d$ occupied i.e., the primes congruent to the same class mod $d$ are placed in the same subset. This ensures that for any $p, p^{\prime}$ in $S_{j, i}$, one
has $p \equiv p^{\prime}(\bmod d)$. If $d=q$, then $S_{j, i}$ can have at most one element since primes of $S_{j}$ were incongruent mod $q$.

For (b), use Lemma 3.13 (b) to divide $\mathcal{I}$ into at most $\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil$ subsets so that in every $S_{j}$, primes congruent $\bmod q$ are separated by at least $L q$. Again, further split every $S_{j}$ into $\varphi(d)$ more parts depending on the residue class mod $d$ occupied. This ensures that the difference of any $p, p^{\prime}$ in $S_{j, i}$ is divisible by $d$. Again, when $d=q$, it means that any two primes of $S_{j, i}$ are separated by at least $L q$.

### 3.4 Proof of the main results

Now, we give the proof of Theorems 3.2, 3.3 and 3.4

### 3.4.1 Proof of Theorem 3.2

We prove the following proposition, which yields Theorem 3.2 as a corollary.

Proposition 3.15. Let $\alpha$ be as in (AP3) and $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ be a sequence of supported on the odd numbers. Let $\mathcal{M}$ and $\mathcal{N}$ be as in (H6). Then
(a) Suppose that $|\delta| / x \leq 1 / 2 q^{2}$ (this holds whenever $q \leq Q_{0} / 2$ ). Then

$$
\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq\left\lceil\frac{M}{q}\right\rceil\left(\frac{N}{2}+2 q\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

(b) Suppose $\delta \neq 0$ and $M+q \leq x /|\delta| q$. Then

$$
\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{x}{|\delta| q}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

Proof of Proposition 3.15. Part (a) follows from the standard large sieve. As $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$
is supported on odd numbers, a change of variable in the $n$-sum makes it

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}^{\prime}} a_{2 n+1} e(m n(2 \alpha))\right|^{2}, \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{N}^{\prime}$ denotes the set $\{(n-1) / 2: n \in \mathcal{N}\}$, which is contained in an interval of length at most $N / 2$. We apply Lemma 3.11 (b) with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{m}=m(2 \alpha)=b_{m} / q+\beta_{m}+\gamma, \quad \text { where } b_{m}=m a, \beta_{m}=m \delta / x, \gamma=0 . \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

To ensure that $b_{m}$ 's are distinct $\bmod q, \mathcal{M}$ is divided into intervals of length $q$ (at $\operatorname{most}\lceil M / q\rceil$ in number), which ensures that any $m \neq m^{\prime}$ in such an interval are distinct $\bmod q$. Then $\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right|=\left|\left(m-m^{\prime}\right) \delta\right| / x \leq q|\delta| / x \leq 1 / 2 q=\theta$, since $|\delta| / x \leq 1 / 2 q^{2}$. Applying Lemma 3.11 (b) with $\phi=1 / q-\theta=1 / 2 q$ for all such intervals, we get

$$
\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}}\left|\sum_{\substack{n \in \mathcal{N} \\ n \text { odd }}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq\left\lceil\frac{M}{q}\right\rceil\left(\frac{N}{2}+2 q\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}^{\prime}}\left|a_{2 n+1}\right|^{2}=\left\lceil\frac{M}{q}\right\rceil\left(\frac{N}{2}+2 q\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

For (b), again a change of variable reduces this to (3.17) and the $n$-sum runs over $\mathcal{N}^{\prime}$ of length at most $N / 2$. We use Lemma 3.11 (a) with $\alpha_{m}$ from (3.18). For $m, m^{\prime} \in \mathcal{M}$, we have $\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right|=\left|\left(m-m^{\prime}\right) \delta / x\right| \leq M|\delta| / x=\theta$. Moreover, if $b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q)$, $m \neq m^{\prime}$, then $m \equiv m^{\prime}(\bmod q)$ which means $\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right| \geq q|\delta| / x=\rho$. We also have $\theta+\rho=M|\delta| / x+q|\delta| / x \leq 1 / q$ by hypothesis. Therefore, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}}\left|\sum_{\substack{n \in \mathcal{N} \\
n \text { odd }}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} & =\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}^{\prime}} a_{2 n+1} e(m n(2 \alpha))\right|^{2} \leq\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{x}{|\delta| q}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}^{\prime}}\left|a_{2 n+1}\right|^{2} \\
& \leq\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{x}{|\delta| q}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This completes the proof.

Proof of Theorem 3.2. By the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, we reduce to (3.6) and apply the large sieve to the second quantity. This gives the bound (3.7) with $\Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})$ as obtained from Proposition 3.15.

If (i) holds, then $\delta_{0}=2$ (as $\left.|\delta| \leq 10\right)$ and Proposition 3.15 (a) gives

$$
\Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})=\left\lceil\frac{M}{q}\right\rceil\left(\frac{N}{2}+2 q\right)=\left(1+\frac{M}{q}\right)\left(\frac{N}{2}+2 q\right)=\frac{N}{2}+2 M+\delta_{0} q+\frac{x}{4 \delta_{0} q} .
$$

If (ii) holds, then $\delta_{0}=|\delta| / 5$ and Proposition 3.15 (b) gives

$$
\Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})=\frac{N}{2}+\frac{x}{|\delta| q}=\frac{N}{2}+\frac{x}{5 \delta_{0} q} .
$$

Comparing the above bounds, we see that the bound in (i) is larger. This completes the proof.

Next, we prove Theorem 3.3.

### 3.4.2 Proof of Theorem 3.3

We prove the following proposition, which immediately yields Theorem 3.3.

Proposition 3.16. Let $\alpha$ be as in (AP3), $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ be a sequence supported on the primes and $\mathcal{M}$ and $\mathcal{N}$ be as in (H6). Then
(a) If $|\delta| \leq 10$ and $14 q<N \leq x / 56 q$ (so that $14 q \leq M<x / 56 q$ ), then

$$
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\ m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 q}{\varphi(2 q)} \frac{x}{2 q \log \frac{M}{2 q} \log \frac{N}{2 q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

(b) If $|\delta| \geq 10$ and $2|\delta| q / 5 \leq N \leq x / 88|\delta| q$ (so that $22|\delta| q \leq M \leq 5 x / 8|\delta| q$ ), then

$$
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\ m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 q}{\varphi(2 q)} \frac{5 x}{|\delta| q \log \frac{M}{2|\delta| q} \log \frac{7 N}{|\delta| q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

Proof of Proposition 3.16. We need to save logarithmic factors over both the variables $m$ and $n$. For the $n$-sum, the large sieve for primes gives the saving and for the $m$-sum, saving comes from the Brun-Titchmarsh Theorem.

Let us prove (a). We make use of Lemma 3.11 (a). As $2 \alpha=a / q+\delta / x$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{m}=m \alpha=b_{m} / q+\beta_{m}+\gamma, \quad \text { where } b_{m}=\frac{(m-1) a}{2}, \quad \beta_{m}=\frac{(m-1) \delta}{2 x}, \gamma=\alpha . \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

We have to ensure that $b_{m}$ 's are all distinct $(\bmod q)$, which is the same as $2 q \nmid m-m^{\prime}$. We use Lemma 3.13 for this purpose. Let

$$
B_{1}=\frac{2 M}{\varphi(2 q) \log \frac{M}{2 q}} .
$$

From Lemma 3.13 (a) with $\mathcal{I}=\mathcal{M}$ and $2 q$ in place of $q$, we can partition the primes of $\mathcal{M}$ into subsets $S_{j}, 1 \leq j \leq\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor$ such that primes in every $S_{j}$ occupy distinct residue classes $\bmod 2 q$, i.e., $b_{m}, m \in S_{j}$ are distinct $(\bmod q)$. Moreover, the errors $\beta_{m}$ and $\beta_{m^{\prime}}$ are separated by at most $\left|\left(m-m^{\prime}\right) \delta\right| / 2 x \leq M|\delta| / 2 x=\theta$. We apply Lemma 3.11 (a) for each $S_{j}$ with $\alpha_{m}$ as in (3.19) and $\theta=M|\delta| / 2 x=|\delta| /(8 N)$. The conditions $14 q<N \leq 5 /(4 \theta)=10 N /|\delta|$ hold since $|\delta| \leq 10$. Therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\
m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} & \leq B_{1} \cdot \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 N}{\log \frac{N}{2 q}} \sum_{n \in N}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}=\frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 M}{\varphi(2 q) \log \frac{M}{2 q} \frac{2 N}{\log \frac{N}{2 q}} \sum_{n \in N}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}} \\
& \leq \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 q}{\varphi(2 q)} \frac{x}{2 q \log \frac{M}{2 q} \log \frac{N}{2 q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2},
\end{aligned}
$$

where we use $M N=x / 4$ from (H6).

To prove (b), we use Lemma 3.11 (c). Recall that $\alpha_{m}=m \alpha$ as in (3.19). Again, $b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q)$ is the same as $m \equiv m^{\prime}(\bmod 2 q)$. Let

$$
L=\frac{M}{2|\delta| q} \geq 11 \quad \text { and } \quad B_{2}=\frac{2 q}{\varphi(2 q)} \frac{2 L}{\log L} \geq 9
$$

Using Lemma 3.13 (b) with $\mathcal{I}=\mathcal{M}$ and with $2 q$ in place of $q$, we partition the primes of $\mathcal{M}$ into at most $\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil \leq 10 B_{2} / 9$ subsets $S_{j}, 1 \leq j \leq\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil$ such that for distinct primes $m, m^{\prime}$ in $S_{j}$ satisfying $m \equiv m^{\prime}(\bmod 2 q)\left(\right.$ or $\left.b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q)\right)$, we have $\left|m-m^{\prime}\right| \geq 2 L q$. This means that

$$
\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right|=\left|\frac{\left(m-m^{\prime}\right) \delta}{2 x}\right| \geq \frac{L q|\delta|}{x}=\rho,
$$

whenever $b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q)$ with $m \neq m^{\prime}$. We already know that $\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right| \leq \theta=$ $M|\delta| / 2 x$ from the proof of (a). Also

$$
\theta+\rho=\frac{L q|\delta|}{x}+\frac{M|\delta|}{2 x}=\frac{M(1+|\delta|)}{2 x} \leq \frac{11 M|\delta|}{20 x}<1 / q
$$

since $1+|\delta| \leq 11|\delta| / 10$, for $|\delta| \geq 10$ and $M \leq 5 x / 8|\delta| q$. Similarly, we have $\theta+\rho=$ $M(1+|\delta|) / 2 x>1 / N q$ since $|\delta| \geq 10$ and $M N=x / 4$. Therefore, the conditions of Lemma 3.11 (c) hold and applying it for each subset $S_{j}$ (at most $\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil \leq 10 B_{2} / 9$ in number), we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\
m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} & \leq \frac{10 B_{2}}{9} \cdot \frac{2 q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{\left(N+\frac{x}{L|\delta| q}\right)}{\log \frac{20 x}{11 M| | \delta \mid q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \\
& =\frac{20}{9} \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 q}{\varphi(2 q)} \frac{2 L}{\log L} \frac{\left(N+\frac{x}{L|\delta| q}\right)}{\log \frac{20 x}{11 M|\delta| q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \\
& \leq \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 q}{\varphi(2 q)} \frac{5 x}{|\delta| q \log \frac{M}{2|\delta| q} \log \frac{7 N}{|\delta| q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

where we use

$$
N+\frac{x}{L|\delta| q}=N+\frac{2 x}{M}=9 N \quad \text { and } \quad \log \frac{20 x}{11 M|\delta| q}=\log \frac{80 N}{11|\delta| q}>\log \frac{7 N}{|\delta| q}
$$

This completes the proof.

Proof of Theorem 3.3. From Proposition 3.16, the bound (3.7) holds with

$$
\Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})= \begin{cases}\frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 q}{\varphi(2 q)} \frac{x}{2 q \log \frac{M}{2 q} \log \frac{N}{2 q}}, & |\delta| \leq 10 \\ \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 q}{\varphi(2 q)} \frac{5 x}{|\delta| q \log \frac{M}{2|\delta| q} \log \frac{7 N}{|\delta| q}}, & |\delta|>10\end{cases}
$$

Substituting $\delta_{0}=2$ when $|\delta| \leq 10$ and $\delta_{0}=|\delta| / 5$ when $|\delta|>10$, and comparing the log factors, we get the required bound.

### 3.4.3 Proof of Theorem 3.4

For Theorem 3.4, we will need the following proposition:

Proposition 3.17. Let $75 \sqrt{x} \leq Q_{0}<x / 1000$ and $\alpha$ be as in (AP3). Let $l_{0} \geq 1$ be a square-free positive integer and $\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}$ be as in (H6). Let $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ be a sequence supported on odd numbers and $F_{0}$ be as in (3.8). Then we have the following:
(a) Suppose $q \leq Q_{0} / 100$ and let

$$
M_{0}=\frac{1}{25} \max \left\{\frac{x}{10 q}, Q_{0}\right\}= \begin{cases}\frac{x}{250 q}, & q \leq x / 10 Q_{0}  \tag{3.20}\\ \frac{Q_{0}}{25}, & x / 10 Q_{0}<q \leq Q_{0} / 100\end{cases}
$$

If $|\delta| \leq 10$ and $M \geq M_{0}$ (so that $N \leq x / 4 M_{0}$ ), we have

$$
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\ m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq\left(\frac{25 M}{12} \frac{\varphi\left(l_{0}\right)}{l_{0}}+128 M_{0} \varphi\left(l_{0}\right)\right) \frac{F_{0}\left(l_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{M_{0}}{q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} .
$$

(b) Suppose $|\delta| \geq 10$ (which implies $q \leq x / 10 Q_{0}$ ) and that $M \geq 5 x / 28|\delta| q$ (so that $N \leq 7|\delta| q / 5)$. Then

$$
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\ m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq\left(\frac{25 M}{12} \frac{\varphi\left(l_{0}\right)}{l_{0}}+\frac{101 x}{24|\delta| q} \varphi\left(l_{0}\right)\right) \frac{F_{0}\left(l_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{32 x}{99(\delta \mid q)^{2}}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} .
$$

(c) Suppose $\delta=0$, i.e., $2 \alpha=a / q$ and that $M \geq 200 Q_{0}$. Then

$$
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\ m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq\left(2 M \frac{\varphi\left(l_{0}\right)}{l_{0}}+\frac{x}{4 q} \varphi\left(l_{0}\right)\right) \frac{F_{0}\left(l_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{M}{q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

Proof of Proposition 3.17. The proceeds in a similar manner to Theorem 3.3.
We first prove (a). As $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ are supported on odd numbers, the sum reduces to (3.17). So, we apply Lemma 3.11 (b) with $\alpha_{m}$ given in (3.18). With $M_{0}$ in (3.20), we have $M_{0}>q$ in both cases because $q \leq Q_{0} / 100$ and $Q_{0} \geq 75 \sqrt{x}$. We split $\mathcal{M}$ into at at most $\left\lceil M / M_{0}\right\rceil$ intervals of length $M_{0}$. For any such interval $\mathcal{M}_{0}$, let

$$
B_{1}=\frac{2 M_{0}}{\varphi(q) \log \frac{M_{0}}{q}} .
$$

Let $g=\left(l_{0}, q\right)$. Then by Lemma 3.14 (a) with $\mathcal{I}=\mathcal{M}_{0}$ and $d=g=\left(l_{0}, q\right)$, we can partition the primes of $\mathcal{M}_{0}$ into at most $\varphi(g)\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor$ subsets $S_{j, i}$ such that primes in $S_{j, i}$ occupy distinct residue classes $\bmod q$ and are congruent $\bmod g($ when $g=q$, $S_{j, i}$ has at most one element and the separation between $\alpha_{m}$ is $\left.\infty\right)$. Therefore, for $m \neq m^{\prime}$ in $S_{j, i}$, we have

$$
\left\|\alpha_{m}-\alpha_{m^{\prime}}\right\|=\left\|\frac{a\left(m-m^{\prime}\right)}{q}+\frac{\left(m-m^{\prime}\right) \delta}{x}\right\| \geq \frac{g}{q}-\frac{M_{0}|\delta|}{x} \geq \frac{24 g}{25 q},
$$

since $g \mid m-m^{\prime}$ and

$$
\frac{M_{0}|\delta|}{x} \leq \begin{cases}\frac{|\delta|}{250 q} \leq \frac{10}{250 q} \leq \frac{g}{25 q}, & q<x / 10 Q_{0} \\ \frac{Q_{0}}{25 q Q_{0}} \leq \frac{1}{25 q} \leq \frac{g}{25 q}, & x / 10 Q_{0}<q \leq Q_{0} / 100\end{cases}
$$

Therefore,

$$
\sum_{m \in S_{j, i}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2}=\sum_{m \in S_{j, i}}\left|\sum_{n \in \frac{\mathcal{N}-1}{2}} a_{2 n+1} e(2 m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{25}{24} \frac{q}{g}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

Summing the above over all $1 \leq i \leq \varphi(g), 1 \leq j \leq\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor$ and over all intervals of length $M_{0}$ (at most $\left\lceil M / M_{0}\right\rceil$ in number), we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\
m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} & \leq\left\lceil\frac{M}{M_{0}}\right\rceil \varphi(g) B_{1}\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{25}{24} \frac{q}{g}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \\
& \leq \varphi(g) \frac{2 M_{0}\left\lceil M / M_{0}\right\rceil}{\varphi(q) \log \frac{M_{0}}{q}}\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{25}{24} \frac{q}{g}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \\
& \leq\left(\varphi(g) \frac{N\left(M+M_{0}\right)}{q \log \frac{M_{0}}{q}}+\frac{25}{12} \frac{\varphi(g)}{g} \frac{M+M_{0}}{\log \frac{M_{0}}{q}}\right) \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \tag{3.21}
\end{align*}
$$

where we are using $M_{0}\left\lceil M / M_{0}\right\rceil \leq M+M_{0}$. Since $\left(q, l_{0} / g\right)=1$, one has

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{q}{\varphi(q)}=\frac{\varphi\left(l_{0} / g\right)}{l_{0} / g} \frac{q l_{0} / g}{\varphi\left(q l_{0} / g\right)} \leq \frac{\varphi\left(l_{0} / g\right)}{l_{0} / g} F_{0}\left(l_{0} q\right) \tag{3.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, from (3.21) (and using $M N=x / 4$ from (H6)), we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\
m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq & \frac{25 M}{12} \frac{F_{0}\left(l_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{M_{0}}{q}} \frac{\varphi\left(l_{0}\right)}{l_{0}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \\
& +\left(\frac{x}{4 q}+M_{0}\left(\frac{N}{q}+\frac{25}{12 l_{0}}\right)\right) \frac{\varphi\left(l_{0}\right) F_{0}\left(l_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{M_{0}}{q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Using the bounds $M_{0} N / q \leq x / 4 q$ and $x / 4 q \leq 250 M_{0} / 4$ with $l_{0} \geq 1$, we prove (a).

The proof of (b) is similar to that of (a). Again, as $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ are supported on odd numbers, the given expression reduces to (3.17). We use Lemma 3.11 (b) with $\alpha_{m}$ 's in (3.18). Let $g=\left(l_{0}, q\right)$ and let

$$
\begin{equation*}
M_{0}^{\prime}=\min \left\{\frac{32 g x}{33|\delta| q}, M\right\} \quad \text { and } \quad L=\frac{5 M_{0}^{\prime}}{16|\delta| q}=\min \left\{\frac{10 g x}{33(|\delta| q)^{2}}, \frac{5 M}{16|\delta| q}\right\} . \tag{3.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now split $\mathcal{M}$ into at most $\left\lceil M / M_{0}^{\prime}\right\rceil$ intervals of length $M_{0}^{\prime}$. For any such interval $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{\prime}$, we use Lemma 3.14 (b). It is seen that $L<M_{0}^{\prime} / q$, since $|\delta| \geq 10$. We also have

$$
L= \begin{cases}\frac{10 g x}{33(|\delta| q)^{2}} \geq \frac{10 g x}{33\left(x / Q_{0}\right)^{2}} \geq \frac{10 \cdot(75)^{2} g}{33}>300, & M_{0}^{\prime}<M \\ \frac{5 M}{16|\delta| q} \geq \frac{25 x}{448(|\delta| q)^{2}} \geq \frac{25 x}{448\left(x / Q_{0}\right)^{2}}>300, & M_{0}^{\prime}=M\end{cases}
$$

as $M \geq 5 x / 28|\delta| q,|\delta| q \leq x / Q_{0}$ and $Q_{0} \geq 75 \sqrt{x}$. Let

$$
B_{2}=\frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 L}{\log L} \geq 100
$$

since $L>300$. Hence, $\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil \leq 1+B_{2} \leq 1.01 B_{2}$. We apply Lemma 3.14 (b) with $\mathcal{I}=\mathcal{M}_{0}^{\prime}, L$ from (3.23) and $d=g=\left(l_{0}, q\right)$ to partition $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{\prime}$ into at most $\varphi(g)\left\lceil B_{2}\right\rceil$ subsets $S_{j, i}$, such that any two primes in $S_{j, i}$ are congruent $\bmod g$ and distinct primes $m \equiv m^{\prime}(\bmod q)$ satisfy $\left|m-m^{\prime}\right| \geq L q$. This implies

$$
\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right|=\left|\frac{\left(m-m^{\prime}\right) \delta}{x}\right| \geq \frac{L q|\delta|}{x}=\rho, \quad \text { say },
$$

whenever $b_{m} \equiv b_{m}^{\prime}(\bmod q), m \neq m^{\prime}$. Also, in any $S_{j, i}$, we have $\left|\beta_{m}-\beta_{m^{\prime}}\right| \leq$ $M_{0}^{\prime}|\delta| / x \leq 32 g / 33 q=\theta$, say. Therefore, the $\alpha_{m}$ 's in $S_{j, i}$ are separated by at least

$$
\left\|\alpha_{m}-\alpha_{m}^{\prime}\right\|=\left\|\frac{\left(m-m^{\prime}\right) a}{q}+\frac{\left(m-m^{\prime}\right) \delta}{x}\right\| \geq \begin{cases}g / q-\theta=\frac{g}{33 q}, & b_{m} \not \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q) \\ \frac{L|\delta| q}{x}, & b_{m} \equiv b_{m^{\prime}}(\bmod q)\end{cases}
$$

It is easily seen that $\frac{g}{33 q} \geq \frac{10 g}{33|\delta| q} \geq \frac{L|\delta| q}{x}=\rho$ since $|\delta| \geq 10$ and $L \leq \frac{10 g x}{33(|\delta| q)^{2}}$ by definition of $L$. Therefore, the large sieve applied to each $S_{j, i}$ gives

$$
\sum_{m \in S_{j, i}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{x}{L|\delta| q}\right) \sum_{n \in \frac{\mathcal{N}-1}{2}}\left|a_{2 n+1}\right|^{2}=\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{x}{L|\delta| q}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} .
$$

Summing over all $S_{j, i}$ and all intervals $\mathcal{M}_{0}^{\prime}$, we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\
m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} & \leq 1.01 B_{2}\left\lceil\frac{M}{M_{0}^{\prime}}\right] \varphi(g)\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{x}{L|\delta| q}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \\
& =1.01 \varphi(g) \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \frac{2 L}{\log L}\left[\frac{M}{M_{0}^{\prime}}\right]\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{x}{L|\delta| q}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \\
& =1.01 \frac{\varphi\left(l_{0}\right)}{l_{0} / g}\left(1+\frac{M}{M_{0}^{\prime}}\right)\left(N L+\frac{2 x}{|\delta| q}\right) \frac{F_{0}\left(l_{0} q\right)}{\log L} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \tag{3.24}
\end{align*}
$$

where we use (3.22) in the last line. Now, we note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(1+\frac{M}{M_{0}^{\prime}}\right)\left(N L+\frac{2 x}{|\delta| q}\right) & \leq N L+\frac{L M N}{M_{0}^{\prime}}+\frac{2 x}{|\delta| q}+\frac{2 x M}{M_{0}^{\prime}|\delta| q} \\
& \leq \frac{L x}{4 M}+\frac{L x}{4 M_{0}^{\prime}}+\frac{2 x}{|\delta| q}+\frac{2 x}{|\delta| q} \max \left\{\frac{33 M|\delta| q}{32 x g}, 1\right\} \\
& \leq \frac{5 x}{64|\delta| q}+\frac{5 x}{64|\delta| q}+\frac{2 x}{|\delta| q}+\max \left\{\frac{33 M}{16 g}, \frac{2 x}{|\delta| q}\right\} \\
& \leq \frac{133 x}{32|\delta| q}+\frac{33 M}{16 g} .
\end{aligned}
$$

where we use $L / M \leq L / M_{0}^{\prime}=5 / 16|\delta| q$, substitute the value of $M_{0}^{\prime}$ and then finally use $\max \{a, b\} \leq a+b$. Substituting the above in (3.24), we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\
m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} & \leq 1.01 \frac{\varphi\left(l_{0}\right)}{l_{0} / g}\left(\frac{133 x}{32|\delta| q}+\frac{33 M}{16 g}\right) \frac{F_{0}\left(l_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{5 M_{0}^{\prime}}{16|\delta| q}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}  \tag{3.25}\\
& \leq\left(\frac{21 x}{5|\delta| q} \varphi\left(l_{0}\right)+\frac{25 M}{12} \frac{\varphi\left(l_{0}\right)}{l_{0}}\right) \frac{F_{0}\left(l_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{25 x}{448(|\delta| q)^{2}}} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} .
\end{align*}
$$

where we use $M_{0}^{\prime}=\min \{32 x g / 33|\delta| q, M\} \geq 5 x / 28|\delta| q($ since $M \geq 5 x / 28|\delta| q)$ in the $\log$ factor. This proves (b).

For (c), we have $2 \alpha=a / q$, since $\delta=0$ and we no longer have to bother about the size of $M$ (earlier we required $M_{0}|\delta| / x \leq(1-\epsilon) / q$ ). Again, as $\left\{a_{n}\right\}$ are supported on odd numbers, the expression reduces to (3.17) with $2 \alpha=a / q$. We use Lemma 3.11 (a) with $\alpha_{m}$ from (3.18) and in addition, $\beta_{m}=0$. Let $g=\left(l_{0}, q\right)$ and set

$$
B_{1}=\frac{2 M}{\varphi(q) \log \frac{M}{q}}
$$

Again, split $\mathcal{M}$ into at most $\varphi(g)\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor$ subsets $S_{j, i}$ so that primes in $S_{j, i}$ are incongruent $\bmod q$ and congruent $\bmod g$. Then for distinct primes $m, m^{\prime} \in S_{j, i}$, we have

$$
\left\|\alpha_{m}-\alpha_{m^{\prime}}\right\|=\|\left(\frac{\left(m-m^{\prime}\right) a}{q} \| \geq \frac{g}{q}\right.
$$

Therefore

$$
\sum_{\substack{m \in S_{j, i}, i \\ m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} \leq\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{q}{g}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
$$

Summing over all $1 \leq i \leq \varphi(g), 1 \leq j \leq\left\lfloor B_{1}\right\rfloor$, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\substack{m \in \mathcal{M} \\
m \text { prime }}}\left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} a_{n} e(m n \alpha)\right|^{2} & \leq \varphi(g) B_{1}\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{q}{g}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2} \\
& \leq \varphi(g) \frac{2 M}{\varphi(q) \log \frac{M}{q}}\left(\frac{N}{2}+\frac{q}{g}\right) \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proceeding in the same manner as the proof of (a) from (3.21) onwards with $M=M_{0}$ and using (3.22), we will obtain the required bound. This completes the proof.

Proof of Theorem 3.4. By the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, the given expression for $S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)$ reduces to (3.7), i.e., $|S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)| \leq \Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})^{1 / 2}\|\boldsymbol{a}\|\|\boldsymbol{b}\|$, with $\Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})$ obtained from Proposition 3.17 according to the case under consideration.

Let us first prove (a). We apply Proposition 3.17 (a) and (b) with $l_{0}=2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5=30$. We then have $\varphi\left(l_{0}\right)=8$ and $\frac{\varphi\left(l_{0}\right)}{l_{0}}=\frac{4}{15}$.

If $|\delta| \leq 10$ (so that $\delta_{0}=2$ ), Proposition 3.17 (a) (with $M_{0}=x / 250 q$ ) gives

$$
\Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})=\left(\frac{25 M}{12} \cdot \frac{4}{15}+\frac{128 x}{250 q} \cdot 8\right) \cdot \frac{F_{0}(30 q)}{\log \frac{x}{250 q^{2}}} \leq\left(\frac{5 M}{9}+\frac{8.192 x}{\delta_{0} q}\right) \cdot \frac{F_{0}\left(15 \delta_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{x}{63\left(\delta_{0} q\right)^{2}}} .
$$

If $|\delta| \geq 10$ (so that $\delta_{0}=|\delta| / 5$ ), Proposition 3.17 (b) gives

$$
\Delta(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N})=\left(\frac{25 M}{12} \cdot \frac{4}{15}+\frac{21 x}{5|\delta| q} \cdot 8\right) \cdot \frac{F_{0}(30 q)}{\log \frac{25 x}{448(|\delta| q)^{2}}} \leq\left(\frac{5 M}{9}+\frac{6.72 x}{\delta_{0} q}\right) \cdot \frac{F_{0}\left(15 \delta_{0} q\right)}{\log \frac{x}{448(\delta q q)^{2}}} .
$$

Comparing the estimates in the above two cases and choosing the weakest amongst them, we get the desired bound by using $F_{0}(30 q) \leq F_{0}\left(15 \delta_{0} q\right)$.

The proof of (b) follows in the same manner as (a) above with Proposition 3.17 (a) (as $q>x / 10 Q_{0}$ implies $\left.|\delta| \leq 10\right)$ applied with $M_{0}=Q_{0} / 25$.

We now prove (c). Since $2 \alpha=a / q+\delta / x$, it follows that $\alpha=a^{\prime} / q^{\prime}+\delta / 2 x$, where either $q^{\prime}=q$ or $q^{\prime}=2 q$. So we write

$$
e(m n \alpha)=e\left(\frac{m n a^{\prime}}{q^{\prime}}\right) e\left(\frac{m n \delta}{2 x}\right)=e\left(\frac{m n a^{\prime}}{q^{\prime}}\right) \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}\left(\frac{2 \pi i m n \delta}{2 x}\right)^{k} .
$$

Therefore, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}\left(\frac{\pi i \delta}{x}\right)^{k} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} n^{k} a_{n} \sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} m^{k} b_{m} e\left(\frac{m n a^{\prime}}{q^{\prime}}\right) \tag{3.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

From (3.7) with the $\left\{a_{n}\right\},\left\{b_{m}\right\}$ replaced by $\left\{n^{k} a_{n}\right\},\left\{m^{k} b_{m}\right\}$ and apply Proposition
3.17 (c) (as $\delta=0$ above) with $l_{0}=30$ to get

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left|\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} n^{k} a_{n} \sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} m^{k} b_{m} e\left(\frac{m n a^{\prime}}{q^{\prime}}\right)\right| \\
\leq & \left(2 M \cdot \frac{4}{15}+\frac{x}{4 q} \cdot 8\right)^{1 / 2}\left(\frac{F_{0}(30 q)}{\log \frac{M}{q}}\right)^{1 / 2}\left\|\left\{n^{k} a_{n}\right\}\right\| \cdot\left\|\left\{m^{k} b_{m}\right\}\right\|  \tag{3.27}\\
\leq & \left(\frac{8 M}{15}+\frac{2 x}{q}\right)^{1 / 2}\left(\frac{F_{0}(30 q)}{\log \frac{M}{q}}\right)^{1 / 2}(2 N)^{k}(2 M)^{k}\|\boldsymbol{a}\| \cdot\|\boldsymbol{b}\|,
\end{align*}
$$

since $\left\|\left\{n^{k} a_{n}\right\}\right\|=\left(\sum_{n \in \mathcal{N}} n^{2 k}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}\right)^{1 / 2} \leq(2 N)^{k}\|\boldsymbol{a}\|$ and similarly we have $\left\|\left\{m^{k} b_{m}\right\}\right\| \leq$ $(2 M)^{k}\|\boldsymbol{b}\|$. Implementing this in the above and substituting in (3.26), we find that

$$
\begin{aligned}
|S(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}, \alpha)| & \leq \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}\left(\frac{4 \pi|\delta| M N}{x}\right)^{k}\left(\frac{8 M}{15}+\frac{2 x}{q}\right)^{1 / 2}\left(\frac{F_{0}(30 q)}{\log \frac{M}{q}}\right)^{1 / 2}\|\boldsymbol{a}\| \cdot\|\boldsymbol{b}\| \\
& \leq e^{\pi|\delta|}\left(\frac{8 M}{15}+\frac{2 x}{q}\right)^{1 / 2}\left(\frac{F_{0}(30 q)}{\log \frac{M}{q}}\right)^{1 / 2}\|\boldsymbol{a}\| \cdot\|\boldsymbol{b}\|
\end{aligned}
$$

where we use $M N=x / 4$ from (H6). This completes the proof.

## Chapter 4

## Correlations of certain arithmetic

## functions

### 4.1 Introduction

In this chapter we study partial sums of products of shifted arithmetic functions of a certain type. We make use of the convolution method to establish these results.

Definition 4.1. A function $F: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ is called an arithmetic function. It is called multiplicative if

$$
F(m n)=F(m) F(n) \quad \text { for all } m, n \in \mathbb{N} \text { with }(m, n)=1 .
$$

Definition 4.2. Let $F$ and $G$ be arithmetic functions. Then the Dirichlet convolution of $F$ and $G$, denoted by $F * G$, is defined by

$$
(F * G)(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} F(d) G\left(\frac{n}{d}\right), \quad \text { for all } n \in \mathbb{N} .
$$

Let $F$ and $G$ are arithmetic functions and $h \in \mathbb{Z}$. In [BG15] the authors obtain
an asymptotic formula for the sum

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{n \leq x} F(n) G(n-h) \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $F=f * 1$ and $G=g * 1$ and $F(p)$ and $G(p)$ are close to 1 for primes $p$. We give an improved asymptotic formula in Theorem 4.4.

One of the methods of estimating the sum (4.1) is the Convolution method. We write $F(n)=\sum_{d_{1} \mid n} f\left(d_{1}\right)$ and $G(n-h)=\sum_{d_{2} \mid n-h} g\left(d_{2}\right)$, so that the sum becomes

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{\substack{d_{1}\left|n \\
d_{2}\right| n-h}} f\left(d_{1}\right) g\left(d_{2}\right) & =\sum_{\substack{\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right) \mid h}} f\left(d_{1}\right) g\left(d_{2}\right) \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\
n \equiv 0\left(\bmod d_{1}\right) \\
n \equiv h\left(\bmod d_{2}\right)}} 1 \\
& =\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, d_{2} \leq x \\
\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right) \mid h}} f\left(d_{1}\right) g\left(d_{2}\right)\left(\frac{x}{\left[d_{1}, d_{2}\right]}+O(1)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then one proves that the main term is $x \sum_{\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right) \mid h} \frac{f\left(d_{1}\right) g\left(d_{2}\right)}{\left[d_{1}, d_{2}\right]}$ and estimates the error term. The same method can be applied to obtain an asymptotic formula for

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{n \leq x} \mu^{2}(n) G(n-h), \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mu$ is the Möbius function defined by

$$
\mu(n)= \begin{cases}1, & n=1 \\ (-1)^{r}, & n=p_{1} \ldots p_{r}, \quad p_{i} \text { distinct. } \\ 0, & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

Much work has been done on this and related problems. In [Mir49b], Mirsky considers the sum $\sum_{n \leq x} F_{1}\left(n+k_{1}\right) \ldots F_{s}\left(n+k_{s}\right)$, where $F_{j}=1 * f_{j}$ and $f_{j}(p)=O\left(p^{-\sigma+\epsilon}\right)$ for all $j$. In [Ste97], Stepanauskas considers (4.1) under a weaker hypothesis that $\sum_{p}(f(p)+g(p)-2) / p<\infty$. In [ŠS07], Stepanauskas and Siaulys also consider
the sum $\sum_{p \leq x} F(p+1) G(p+2)$, where the sum runs over the primes. In [CMS16], Coppola, Murty, Saha consider the sum (4.1) under a general condition that $F$ and $G$ admit a Ramanujan expansion. More results of this kind are found in papers of Carlitz [Car66], Choi and Schwarz [CS02], Katai [Kát69] and Rearick [Rea66].

Since the aforementioned results are proved under different hypothesis (plural), it is difficult to compare the strength of our results directly with earlier results. However the functions like $\varphi_{s}(n) / n^{s}$ and $\sigma_{s}(n) / n^{s}$ serve as a common thread between them and our Theorem 4.4.

### 4.2 Main results

In [BG15], Balasubramanian and Giri proved the following asymptotic formula for the sum (4.1). Their main result is the following:

Theorem A. For arithmetic functions $f$ and $g$, let $E_{f}(x)=\sum_{n \leq x}|f(n)|$ and $E_{g}(x)=$ $\sum_{n \leq x}|g(n)|$. Then if $F=1 * f$ and $G=1 * g$ we have

$$
\sum_{n \leq x} F(n) G(n-h)=x C(h)+O\left(h E_{f}(x) E_{g}(x)\right) .
$$

where

$$
C(h)=\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, d_{2} \geq 1 \\\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right) \mid h}} \frac{f\left(d_{1}\right) g\left(d_{2}\right)}{\left[d_{1}, d_{2}\right]} .
$$

Now we define a class of arithmetic functions.

Definition 4.3. For any $\alpha>0$, denote by $\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ the family of arithmetic functions $g$ for which there is a positive real number $C$ such that satisfying $|g(n)| \leq \frac{C}{n^{\alpha}}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Henceforth, assume $0<\alpha \leq \beta$ and define:

$$
E(x ; \alpha, \beta)= \begin{cases}x^{1-\alpha}, & \alpha<\min \{1, \beta\}  \tag{4.3}\\ x^{1-\alpha} \log x, & \alpha=\beta<1 \text { or } 1=\alpha<\beta \\ \log ^{2} x, & \alpha=\beta=1 \\ 1, & 1<\alpha<\beta\end{cases}
$$

We prove the following:

Theorem 4.4. Let $F=f * 1, G=g * 1$, with $f \in \mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ and $g \in \mathcal{A}_{\beta}$, with $0<\alpha \leq \beta$. Then, uniformly for all $h \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $|h| \leq \frac{x}{2}$, we have

$$
\sum_{H<n \leq x} F(n) G(n-h)=(x-H) C(h)+O(E(x ; \alpha, \beta)),
$$

where $H=\max \{h, 0\}$ and

$$
C(h)=\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, d_{2} \geq 1 \\\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right) \mid h}} \frac{f\left(d_{1}\right) g\left(d_{2}\right)}{\left[d_{1}, d_{2}\right]} .
$$

Moreover, the $O$-constant in the error term depends only on $\alpha$ and $\beta$.

Remark 4.5. Theorem 4.4 also covers $h=0$. In this case, there are no restrictions on $d_{1}, d_{2}$ in the expression for $C(h)$. Also, since $f(a) \ll d_{1}^{-\alpha}$ and $g(b) \ll d_{2}^{-\beta}$, the series for $C(h)$ is well-defined and admits a product expansion whenever $f$ and $g$ are multiplicative, i.e.,

$$
C(h)=\prod_{p}\left(\sum_{\substack{e_{1}, e_{2} \geq 0 \\ \min \left(e_{1}, e_{2}\right) \leq v_{p}(h)}} \frac{f\left(p^{e_{1}}\right) g\left(p^{e_{2}}\right)}{p^{\max \left(e_{1}, e_{2}\right)}}\right),
$$

where $v_{p}(h)= \begin{cases}\infty, & h=0, \\ m, & h \neq 0 \text { and } p^{m} \||h| .\end{cases}$

This method also applies to study the sum (4.2). Let

$$
E_{1}(x ; \alpha)= \begin{cases}x^{1-\alpha}, & 0<\alpha \leq 1 / 2  \tag{4.4}\\ x^{1 / 2}, & \alpha>1 / 2\end{cases}
$$

In [BGS17], we prove the following:

Theorem 4.6. Let $G=g * 1$, with $g \in \mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ for some $\alpha>0$. Then, uniformly for all $|h| \leq \frac{x}{2}$ and $\epsilon>0$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{H<n \leq x} \mu^{2}(n) G(n-h)=(x-H) K(h)+O_{\epsilon}\left(x^{\epsilon} E_{1}(x ; \alpha)\right), \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $H=\max \{h, 0\}$ and

$$
K(h)=\sum_{\substack{a, b \geq 1 \\\left(a^{2}, b\right) \mid h}} \frac{\mu(a) g(b)}{\left[a^{2}, b\right]}
$$

Remark 4.7. Later in Section 4.4.5, we shall indicate how the $x^{\epsilon}$ in the error term of Theorem 4.6 may be replaced with a power of $\log x$ provided $\alpha$ is not close to $1 / 2$.

Remark 4.8. Theorem 4.6 covers the case $h=0$. Also, $K(h)$ is well-defined since $g \in A_{\alpha}$. Again, for $g$ multiplicative, $K(h)$ admits a product expansion

$$
K(h)=\prod_{p}\left(\sum_{\max \left(2 e_{1}, e_{2}\right) \leq v_{p}(h)} \frac{\mu\left(p^{e_{1}}\right) g\left(p^{e_{2}}\right)}{p^{\max \left(2 e_{1}, e_{2}\right)}}\right) .
$$

We also prove asymptotic formula for the shifted sum of product of $k$ arithmetic functions $F_{1}, \ldots, F_{k}$, with $F_{j}=1 * f_{j}$ and $f_{j} \in \mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$. We have the following result:

Theorem 4.9. Let $0<\alpha<1$ and $k$ be a positive integer satisfying $k=o(\log \log \log x)$. Let $F_{1}, \ldots, F_{k}$ be arithmetic functions satisfying $F_{j}=1 * f_{j}$, with $f_{j} \in \mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ for all $j$. Let $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{k}$ be integers satisfying $\left|a_{j}\right| \leq x / 2$. Then, for any $\epsilon>0$ and $x$ sufficiently large (depending upon $\epsilon$ and $k$ )
(a)

$$
\sum_{n \leq x} F_{1}\left(n+a_{1}\right) \ldots F_{k}\left(n+a_{k}\right)=C_{1} x+O_{\epsilon}\left(x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon}\right),
$$

where

$$
C_{1}=\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \geq 1 \\\left(d_{i}, d_{j}\right) \mid a_{i}-a_{j}}} \frac{\prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)}{\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]} .
$$

(b)

$$
\sum_{n \leq x} F_{1}\left(n^{2}+a_{1}\right) \ldots F_{k}\left(n^{2}+a_{k}\right)=C_{2} x+O\left(x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon}\right)
$$

where

$$
C_{2}=\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \geq 1 \\\left(d_{i}, d_{j}\right) \mid a_{i}-a_{j}}} \lambda\left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right) \frac{\prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)}{\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]} .
$$

Here $\lambda\left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right)$ denotes the number of solutions modulo $\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]$ to the system of congruences $n^{2} \equiv-a_{j}\left(\bmod d_{j}\right)$, for all $1 \leq j \leq k$.

Remark 4.10. The method can be extended to study $\sum_{n \leq x} F_{1}\left(P_{1}(n)\right) \ldots F_{k}\left(P_{k}(n)\right)$, where $P_{j}$ 's are polynomials with integer coefficients for each $j$.

Remark 4.11. The condition $f_{j} \in \mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ and the bound for $\lambda$ from Lemma 4.25 ensures that $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ are well defined. If the functions $f_{j}$ are multiplicative, the sum $C_{1}$ admits the Euler product

$$
C_{1}=\prod_{p}\left(\sum_{\substack{e_{1, ~}^{1}, e_{k}>0 \\ \min \left(e_{i}, e_{j}\right) \leq_{p}\left(a_{i}-a_{j}\right)}} \frac{\prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(p^{e_{j}}\right)}{p^{\max \left(e_{1}, \ldots, e_{k}\right)}}\right) .
$$

The constant $C_{2}$ can be computed in the following manner: suppose for simplicity that $a_{j}=j$ and that $f_{j}=f$, where $f$ is multiplicative and supported on square-free
numbers. This means the $d_{j}$ are square-free. First, consider those $d_{j}$ 's free of primes $<k$. Then they would be pairwise coprime and therefore system of congruences $n^{2} \equiv-j\left(\bmod d_{j}\right), 1 \leq j \leq k$ has exactly $\lambda\left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right)=\prod_{j=1}^{k} \prod_{p \mid d_{j}}\left(1+\left(\frac{-j}{p}\right)\right)$ solutions modulo $\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]=\prod d_{j}$. The contribution for the $d_{j}$ composed of primes less than $k$ has to evaluated separately according to local constraints. This gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
C_{2} & =A_{2} \prod_{p \geq k}\left(\sum_{\substack{e_{1}, \ldots, e_{k} \in\{0,1\} \\
\min \left\{e_{i}, e_{j}\right\}=0}} \frac{\prod_{j=1}^{k}\left(1+\left(\frac{-j}{p}\right)\right) f\left(p^{e_{j}}\right)}{p^{\max \left\{e_{1}, \ldots, e_{k}\right\}}}\right) \\
& =A_{2} \prod_{p \geq k}\left(1+\frac{f(p)}{p}\left(k+\sum_{j=1}^{k}\left(\frac{-j}{p}\right)\right)\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

where $A_{2}$ corresponds to the finite Euler product for primes $<k$.

We now consider the sum

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{p \leq x} F(p+h) G(p+k) \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

We prove an asymptotic formula for (4.6) in the particular case $F(n)=G(n)=\frac{\varphi(n)}{n}$ and $h=1, k=2$. The same method applies for $F, G$ satisfying $F=f * 1, G=g * 1$ and $f, g$ in $\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ and $\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$, respectively for all values of $h, k$. We prove:

Theorem 4.12. Fix $A>0$. Then

$$
\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{\varphi(p+2)}{p+2} \frac{\varphi(p+1)}{p+1}=\frac{l i(x)}{2} \prod_{p>2}\left(1-\frac{2}{p(p-1)}\right)+O\left(\frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-1}}\right)
$$

where the $O$-constant depends only on $A$. Here $l i(x)=\int_{2}^{x} \frac{d t}{\log t}$.

## Remarks and comparison to previous results

Now, we compare the main results of this chapter with earlier results of a similar type.

Let $f \in \mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ and $g \in A_{\beta}$ with $0<\alpha \leq \beta<1$. Then Theorem 4.4 gives:

$$
\sum_{n \leq x} F(n) G(n-h)=x C(h)+O(E(x ; \alpha, \beta)),
$$

for all $h$ with $|h| \leq \frac{x}{2}$. Note that Theorem A of [BG15] gives the error term $O\left(h x^{2-\alpha-\beta}\right)$, so our result improves this in terms of $h, \alpha$ and $\beta$.

Next, we take $F(n)=n / \varphi(n)$ and $G(n)=\sigma(n) / n$ in Theorem 4.4, so that $f(p)=\frac{1}{p-1}, f\left(p^{k}\right)=0$ for $k \geq 2$ and $g(n)=1 / n$. Thus, we can take $\alpha=1-\epsilon$ and $\beta=1$ in Theorem 4.4, to get

## Corollary 4.13.

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{n \leq x} \frac{\sigma(n+1)}{n+1} \frac{n}{\varphi(n)} & =x \prod_{p}\left(1+\frac{2 p+1}{p\left(p^{2}-1\right)}\right)+O\left(x^{\epsilon}\right) .  \tag{4.7}\\
\sum_{n \leq x} \frac{\sigma(n+1)}{\varphi(n)} & =x \prod_{p}\left(1+\frac{2 p+1}{p\left(p^{2}-1\right)}\right)+O\left(x^{\epsilon}\right) . \tag{4.8}
\end{align*}
$$

We remark that Stepanauskas [Ste97] has proved (4.8) with an error term $O\left(\frac{x}{(\log x)^{2}}\right)$, which is much larger than $O\left(x^{\epsilon}\right)$.

Taking $F(n)=\sigma_{s}(n) / n^{s}, G(n)=\sigma_{t}(n) / n^{t}$ in Theorem 4.4, where $s \leq t$ and $\sigma_{s}(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} d^{s}$, we have $f(n)=1 / n^{s}$ and $g(n)=1 / n^{t}$. This gives

Corollary 4.14. Uniformly for $|h| \leq N / 2$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{n \leq N} \frac{\sigma_{s}(n)}{n^{s}} \frac{\sigma_{t}(n+h)}{(n+h)^{t}}=(N-H) \frac{\zeta(s+1) \zeta(t+1)}{\zeta(s+t+2)} \sigma_{-(s+t+1)}(h)+E(N ; s, t), \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the $O$-term depends only on $s, t$ and is independent of $h$. The error term is $E(N ; s, t)$ defined in (4.3).

We compare (4.9) above with Corollary 1 of [CMS16], where the error term is dependent on $h$, and is given by

$$
\begin{cases}O\left(N^{1-s}(\log N)^{4-2 s}\right), & s<1 \\ O\left(\log ^{3} N\right), & s=1 \\ O(1), & s>1\end{cases}
$$

Similar remarks apply for Corollary 2 of [CMS16].
Remark 4.15. Letting $G(n)=\varphi(n) / n$ in Theorem 4.6 with $h=0$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{n \leq x} \mu^{2}(n) \frac{\varphi(n)}{n}=x \prod_{p}\left(1-\frac{2}{p^{2}}\right)\left(1+\frac{1}{p^{3}-2 p}\right)+O\left(x^{1 / 2}\right) . \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, observe that the Dirichlet series of $\mu^{2}(n) \varphi(n) / n$ is

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mu^{2}(n) \varphi(n)}{n^{1+s}}=\frac{\zeta(s) K(s)}{\zeta(2 s)}
$$

where $K(s)$ is absolutely convergent in $\Re(s)>0$. Due to Landau's theorem, the error term of (4.10) is $\Omega\left(x^{1 / 2-\epsilon}\right)$, if the zeta function were to have a zero close to $\operatorname{Re}(s)=1$ and hence cannot be improved other than terms of the type $\exp \left(-c(\log x)^{2 / 5}(\log \log x)^{3 / 5}\right)$, unless one assumes a good zero-free region for $\zeta(s)$.

For $0<\alpha \leq 1$, let

$$
\sigma_{\alpha}(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} d^{\alpha} \quad \text { and } \quad \varphi_{\alpha}(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \frac{\mu(d)}{d^{\alpha}}=n^{\alpha} \prod_{p \mid n}\left(1-\frac{1}{p^{\alpha}}\right) .
$$

Theorem 4.9 leads to the following when $k=3$. The constants are computed by the method mentioned in remark 4.11.

## Corollary 4.16.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{n \leq x} \frac{\sigma_{\alpha}(n+1)}{(n+1)^{\alpha}} \frac{\sigma_{\alpha}(n+2)}{(n+2)^{\alpha}} \frac{\sigma_{\alpha}(n+3)}{(n+3)^{\alpha}}=A x \prod_{p>2}\left(1+\frac{3}{p^{\alpha+1}-1}\right)+O\left(x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon}\right), \\
\sum_{n \leq x} \frac{\varphi_{\alpha}\left(n^{2}+1\right)}{\left(n^{2}+1\right)^{\alpha}} \frac{\varphi_{\alpha}\left(n^{2}+2\right)}{\left(n^{2}+2\right)^{\alpha}} \frac{\varphi_{\alpha}\left(n^{2}+3\right)}{\left(n^{2}+3\right)^{\alpha}}=B x \prod_{p>2}\left(1-\frac{3+\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right)+\left(\frac{-2}{p}\right)+\left(\frac{-3}{p}\right)}{p^{\alpha+1}}\right) \\
+O\left(x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon}\right),
\end{gathered}
$$

where $A, B$ are Euler factors for $p=2$ and $(\dot{\bar{p}})$ is the Legendre symbol. The Euler product above is $\prod_{p \equiv 1(\bmod 24)}\left(1-\frac{6}{p^{2}}\right) \prod_{p \equiv 13,17,19(\bmod 24)}\left(1-\frac{4}{p^{2}}\right) \prod_{p \equiv 5,7,11(\bmod 24)}\left(1-\frac{2}{p^{2}}\right)$.

Also, Theorem 4.12 improves upon Corollary 1 of [ŠS07], where the authors estimate the error term by $O\left(\frac{\operatorname{li}(x)}{(\log \log x)^{B}}\right)$, which is much larger.

### 4.3 Preliminary lemmas

In this section we give some preliminary lemmas for the proof of the main results. We assume throughout that $0<\alpha \leq \beta$. Recall that

$$
E(x)=E(x ; \alpha, \beta)= \begin{cases}x^{1-\alpha}, & \alpha<\min (1, \beta) \\ x^{1-\alpha} \log x, & \alpha=\beta<1 \text { or } 1=\alpha<\beta \\ \log ^{2} x, & \alpha=\beta=1, \\ 1, & 1<\alpha<\beta\end{cases}
$$

The statements of the lemmas in this section stand true for all $0<\alpha \leq \beta$. However, we give the proofs of these lemmas only in the case $\alpha<\min \{1, \beta\}$ for ease of exposition. The proof follows with minor changes in the other cases. When $\alpha<$ $\min \{1, \beta\}$ we find that

$$
E(x)=O\left(x^{1-\alpha}\right) .
$$

We begin with the following:

## Lemma 4.17.

(a) If $y \geq 1$, then

$$
\sum_{m n \geq y} \frac{1}{m^{1+\alpha} n^{1+\beta}}=O\left(\frac{E(y)}{y}\right)
$$

(b) If $x \geq 1$, then

$$
S=\sum_{[a, b] \geq x} \frac{1}{a^{\alpha} b^{\beta}[a, b]}=O\left(\frac{E(x)}{x}\right) .
$$

Proof. Let us first prove (a). Since $\beta>\alpha$ the sum equals

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n^{1+\beta}} \sum_{m \geq y / n} \frac{1}{m^{1+\alpha}} & =\sum_{n \leq y} \frac{1}{n^{1+\beta}} \sum_{m \geq y / n} \frac{1}{m^{1+\alpha}}+\sum_{n>y} \frac{1}{n^{1+\beta}} \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{1}{m^{1+\alpha}} \\
& =O\left(\frac{1}{y^{\alpha}} \sum_{n \leq y} \frac{1}{n^{1+\beta-\alpha}}\right)+O\left(\sum_{n>y} \frac{1}{n^{1+\beta}}\right)=O\left(y^{-\alpha}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

as required.

For (b), we split the sum depending on $l=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$. Write $a=m l$ and $b=n l$, so that

$$
S \leq \sum_{l \geq 1} \frac{1}{l^{1+\alpha+\beta}} \sum_{m n \geq x / l} \frac{1}{m^{1+\alpha} n^{1+\beta}} .
$$

Thus, using (a)

$$
\begin{aligned}
S & \ll \sum_{l \leq x} \frac{1}{l^{\alpha+\beta}} \frac{E(x / l)}{x}+\sum_{l>x} \frac{1}{l^{1+\alpha+\beta}} \sum_{m, n \geq 1} \frac{1}{m^{1+\alpha} n^{1+\beta}} \\
& \ll x^{-\alpha} \sum_{l \leq x} \frac{1}{l^{1+\beta}}+\sum_{l>x} \frac{1}{l^{1+\alpha+\beta}} \ll x^{-\alpha} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This completes the proof of (b).

Next, we have the following lemma:

Lemma 4.18.
(a) If $y \geq 1$, then

$$
\sum_{m n \leq y} \frac{1}{m^{\alpha} n^{\beta}}=O(E(y))
$$

(b) If $x \geq 1$, then

$$
\sum_{\substack{[a, b] \leq x \\(a, b)=l}} \frac{1}{a^{\alpha} b^{\beta}}=O\left(\frac{E(x)}{l^{1+\beta}}\right) .
$$

(c) If $x \geq 1$, then

$$
\sum_{[a, b] \leq x} \frac{1}{a^{\alpha} b^{\beta}}=O(E(x)) .
$$

Proof. For (a), we write the given sum as

$$
\sum_{m n \leq y} \frac{1}{m^{\alpha} n^{\beta}}=\sum_{n \leq y} \frac{1}{n^{\beta}} \sum_{m \leq y / n} \frac{1}{m^{\alpha}}=O\left(\sum_{n \leq y} \frac{1}{n^{\beta}}\left(\frac{y}{n}\right)^{1-\alpha}\right)=O\left(y^{1-\alpha}\right)
$$

In order to prove (b), we again split the sum depending on the value of $l=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$ and use (a). Writing $a=m l$ and $b=n l$ as before, we find that the sum equals

$$
\frac{1}{l^{\alpha+\beta}} \sum_{\substack{m n \leq x / l \\(m, n)=1}} \frac{1}{m^{\alpha} n^{\beta}} \ll \frac{1}{l^{\alpha+\beta}}\left(\frac{x}{l}\right)^{1-\alpha}
$$

which proves (b).

Now (c) follows directly from (b).

The preceding lemmas lead us to:

## Lemma 4.19.

(a) Let $y \geq 1$ and $|k| \leq \frac{y}{2}$. Then

$$
S_{1}=\sum_{K<m \leq y} \sum_{\substack{a|m \\ b| m-k \\ a b \geq y}} a^{-\alpha} b^{-\beta}=O(E(y))
$$

where $K=\max \{k, 0\}$ and the $O$-constant is dependent only on $\alpha$ and $\beta$.
(b) Let $x \geq 1$ and $|h| \leq \frac{x}{2}$. Then

$$
S_{2}=\sum_{H<n \leq x} \sum_{\substack{c|n \\ d| n-h \\[c, d] \geq x}} c^{-\alpha} d^{-\beta}=O(E(x))
$$

where $H=\max \{h, 0\}$ and the $O$-constant depends only on $\alpha, \beta$.

Proof. We first prove (a). Set $m=a c, m-k=b d$ and write the sum in terms of $c$ and $d$ to get

$$
S_{1}=\sum_{K<m \leq y} \sum_{\substack{c|m \\ d| m-k \\ c d \leq \frac{m(m-k)}{y}}}\left(\frac{m}{c}\right)^{-\alpha}\left(\frac{m-k}{d}\right)^{-\beta}
$$

Since $c d \leq \frac{m(m-k)}{y} \leq m-k$, it follows that $m-k \geq c d$. Therefore

$$
S_{1} \ll \sum_{c d \leq y} c^{\alpha} d^{\beta} \sum_{\substack{m \equiv 0(\bmod c) \\ m=k \bmod d) \\ c d+k \leq m \leq y}} m^{-\alpha}(m-k)^{-\beta} .
$$

The congruences on $m$ reduce to $m \equiv r(\bmod [c, d])$. We now replace $m$ by $m+K$, so that the sum over $m$ is at most

$$
\ll \sum_{\substack{m \equiv r^{\prime}(\bmod [c, d]) \\ c d \leq m \leq y-K}} m^{-\alpha-\beta} \ll \sum_{\substack{m \equiv 0(\bmod [c, d]) \\ c d \leq m \leq 2 y}} m^{-\alpha-\beta} .
$$

Let $l=\operatorname{gcd}(c, d)$ and write $m=j[c, d]$, where $l \leq j \leq \frac{2 y}{[c, d]}$. The sum over $m$ is then

$$
\ll[c, d]^{-\alpha-\beta} \sum_{l \leq j \leq \frac{2 y}{[c, d]}} j^{-\alpha-\beta}
$$

which means that

$$
S_{1} \ll \sum_{\substack{l, j \\ l \leq j}} j^{-\alpha-\beta} \sum_{\substack{[c, d \leq 2 y / j \\(c, d)=l}} \frac{c^{\alpha} d^{\beta}}{[c, d]^{\alpha+\beta}} \ll \sum_{\substack{l, j \\ l \leq j}} j^{-\alpha-\beta} l^{\alpha+\beta} \sum_{\substack{[c, d \leq 2 y / j \\(c, d)=l}} c^{-\beta} d^{-\alpha} .
$$

Applying Lemma 4.18 (b) to the inner sum above, we get

$$
S_{1} \ll y^{1-\alpha} \sum_{j} \frac{1}{j^{1+\beta}} \sum_{l \leq j} \frac{1}{l^{1-\alpha}} \ll y^{1-\alpha} \sum_{j \leq y} \frac{1}{j^{1+\beta-\alpha}} \ll E(y),
$$

which proves (a).

For (b), we split the given sum depending on $(c, d)=l$ to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \ll \sum_{l \mid h} l^{-\alpha-\beta} \sum_{ \ll \sum _ { l | h } l ^ { - \alpha - \beta } \sum _ {\substack{ \substack {H<n \leq x \\
n \equiv 0 ( \bmod \ln \\
l \left\lvert\, \\
\begin{subarray}{c}{c\left|\frac{n}{l} \\
d\right| \frac{n-h}{l} \\
c d \geq x / l}\right.{ H < n \leq x \\
n \equiv 0 ( \operatorname { m o d } \operatorname { l n } \\
l | \\
\begin{subarray} { c } { c | \frac { n } { l } \\
d | \frac { n - h } { l } \\
c d \geq x / l } }\end{subarray}} c^{-\alpha} d^{-\beta} .}
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $n / l=n^{\prime}$ and $h / l=h^{\prime}$. Then the given sum becomes

$$
S_{2} \ll \sum_{l \mid h} l^{-\alpha-\beta} \sum_{H / l<n^{\prime} \leq x / l} \sum_{\substack{c \mid n^{\prime} \\ d n^{\prime} h^{\prime} \\ c d \geq x / l}} c^{-\alpha} d^{-\beta} .
$$

Hence by (a), it follows that

$$
S_{2} \ll \sum_{l \mid h} l^{-\alpha-\beta} E(x / l) \ll x^{1-\alpha} \sum_{l \mid h} \frac{1}{l^{1+\beta}} \ll E(x) .
$$

This proves (b).

Now we give the preliminary lemmas for the proof of Theorem 4.6. Recall that

$$
E_{1}(x)=E_{1}(x ; \alpha)= \begin{cases}x^{1-\alpha}, & 0<\alpha \leq 1 / 2, \\ x^{1 / 2}, & \alpha>1 / 2 .\end{cases}
$$

We have the following:

## Lemma 4.20.

(a) Let c be a positive integer. Then

$$
S=\sum_{\substack{H<n \leq y \\ b\left|c c^{2}\right| n \\ b \mid n-h \\ a^{2} b>z}} b^{-\alpha}=O\left(\frac{y^{\epsilon}}{c}\left(\frac{y}{z}\right)^{\alpha} E_{1}(y)\right) .
$$

(b)

$$
\sum_{H<n \leq x} \sum_{\substack{a^{2} \mid n \\ b n-h \\\left[a^{2}, b\right]>x}} b^{-\alpha}=O\left(x^{\epsilon} E_{1}(x)\right) .
$$

Proof. For (a), observe that as $c a^{2} \mid n$, we have $c a^{2} \leq y$. Split the sum over $a, b$ dyadically i.e., let $a \sim A$ and $b \sim B$, where $n \sim x$ denotes $x<n \leq 2 x$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{A, B} & =\sum_{H<n \leq y}\left(\sum_{\substack{c a^{2} \mid n \\
a \sim A}} 1\right)\left(\sum_{\substack{b \mid n-h \\
b \sim B}} b^{-\alpha}\right) \ll B^{-\alpha} y^{\epsilon} \sum_{\substack{H<n \leq y}} \sum_{\substack{c^{2} \mid n \\
\sim \sim A}} 1 \\
& \ll y^{\epsilon} B^{-\alpha} \sum_{a \sim A} \sum_{\substack{H<n \leq y \\
n \equiv 0\left(\bmod a^{2} c\right)}} 1 \ll y^{\epsilon} B^{-\alpha} \sum_{a \sim A}\left(\frac{y}{c a^{2}}+O(1)\right) \ll \frac{y^{1+\epsilon}}{c A B^{\alpha}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Summing the above over $A=2^{Q}$ and $B=2^{R}$ over powers of 2 with $A \leq y^{1 / 2}, B \leq y$ and $A^{2} B>z$, we get

$$
S=\frac{y^{1+\epsilon}}{c} \sum_{\substack{A=2^{2} \leq y^{1 / 2} \\ B 2^{R} \leq y \\ A^{2} B>z}} \frac{1}{A B^{\alpha}} \ll \frac{y^{1+\epsilon}}{c z^{\alpha}} \sum_{\substack{A=2^{Q} \\ A \leq y^{1 / 2}}} A^{2 \alpha-1} \ll \frac{y^{1+\epsilon}}{c z^{\alpha}} \cdot y^{\alpha-1 / 2} \ll \frac{y^{\epsilon}}{c}\left(\frac{y}{z}\right)^{\alpha} E_{1}(y) .
$$

For (b), let $\left(a^{2}, b\right)=l_{1}^{2} l_{2}$, with $l_{2}$ square-free. This means that $a=k l_{1} l_{2}$ and $b=m l_{1}^{2} l_{2}$, where $\left[a^{2}, b\right]=k^{2} m\left(l_{1} l_{2}\right)^{2}$. Also, for fixed $l_{1}, l_{2}$, the given sum is

$$
\sum_{H<n \leq x} \sum_{\substack{\left.k^{2} l_{1}^{2} l_{2}^{2}\left|n \\ m l_{1}^{2} l\right| n-h \\ k^{2} l_{2} m l_{2} l_{2}\right)^{2}>x \\ l_{1}^{2} l_{2} \mid h}} b^{-\alpha} .
$$

Write $h=h^{\prime} l_{1}^{2} l_{2}$ and $n=n^{\prime} l_{1}^{2} l_{2}$, so that the sum becomes

$$
\ll \sum_{\substack{H<n \leq x \\ n \equiv 0\left(l_{1}^{2} l_{2}\right)}} \sum_{\substack{k^{2} l_{1}^{2} l_{2}\left|n \\ m l_{1} l_{2}\right| n-h \\ k^{2} m>x /\left(l_{1} l_{2}\right)^{2}}} b^{-\alpha} \ll\left(l_{1}^{2} l_{2}\right)^{-\alpha} \sum_{\substack{ \\H / l_{1}^{2} l_{2}<n^{\prime} \leq x /\left(l_{1}^{2} l_{2}\right) \\ l_{2} k_{2}^{2} k^{2}\left|n^{\prime} \\ m\right| n^{\prime}-h^{\prime} \\ k^{2} m>x /\left(l_{1} l_{2}\right)^{2}}} m^{-\alpha} .
$$

Applying (a) to the above sum with $y=\frac{x}{l_{1}^{2} l_{2}}, z=\frac{x}{\left(l_{1} l_{2}\right)^{2}}$ and $c=l_{2}$, we find that for a fixed $l_{1}$ and $l_{2}$ the sum becomes

$$
\ll\left(l_{1}^{2} l_{2}\right)^{-\alpha}\left(\frac{x}{l_{1}^{2} l_{2}}\right)^{\epsilon} l_{2}^{\alpha-1} E_{1}\left(\frac{x}{l_{1}^{2} l_{2}}\right) .
$$

Summing over $l_{1}^{2} l_{2} \leq x$, we obtain the required bound.

Remark 4.21. In the last step of the above proof, we sum over all $l_{1}^{2} l_{2} \leq x$ instead of just $l_{1}^{2} l_{2} \mid h$. This means that the $O$-constant is indeed independent of $h$.

Lemma 4.22. With the notation as before, we have
(a)

$$
\sum_{a^{2} b \leq y} b^{-\alpha}=O\left(E_{1}(y)\right) .
$$

(b)

$$
\sum_{\left[a^{2}, b\right] \leq x} b^{-\alpha}=O\left(E_{1}(x)\right) .
$$

Proof. For (a), the proof follows in the same way as that of Lemma 4.18 (a).

To prove (b), let $\left(a^{2}, b\right)=l_{1}^{2} l_{2}$, where $l_{2}$ is square-free. Write $a=k l_{1} l_{2}$ and $b=m l_{1}^{2} l_{2}$ like the proof of Lemma 4.20 (b). The given sum then reduces to that of (a). Summing over $l_{1}^{2} l_{2} \leq x$ gives us the desired result.

## Lemma 4.23.

(a)

$$
\sum_{a^{2} b>y} \frac{1}{a^{2} b^{1+\alpha}}=O\left(\frac{E_{1}(y)}{y}\right)
$$

(b)

$$
\sum_{\left[a^{2}, b\right]>x} \frac{b^{-\alpha}}{\left[a^{2}, b\right]}=O\left(\frac{E_{1}(x)}{x}\right) .
$$

Proof. For (a), we follow the proof of Lemma 4.17 (a). For (b), let $\left(a^{2}, b\right)=l_{1}^{2} l_{2}$ with $l_{2}$ square-free. Then $a=k l_{1} l_{2}$ and $b=m l_{1}^{2} l_{2}$. The sum then reduces to a sum of the kind in part (a). Summing over $l_{1}, l_{2}$ then gives the desired result.

Definition 4.24. Define a multiplicative function $H(n)$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
H(n)=\prod_{p \mid n} p^{\left\lfloor\frac{v_{p}(n)}{2}\right\rfloor} \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular, for $s$ square-free, we have $H\left(r^{2} s\right)=r$.
Lemma 4.25. Let $a, m$ be positive integers and $h \neq 0$. Let $\lambda(m, a, h)$ denote the number of solutions modulo $m$ to the congruence $a x^{2} \equiv h(\bmod m)$. Then

$$
\lambda(m, a, h) \leq H(m) \tau(m)
$$

where $\tau$ stands for the divisor function.

Proof. If $(a, m)>1$, then $(a, m) \mid h$. Canceling that factor, the congruence becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
a x_{1}^{2} \equiv h_{1}\left(\bmod m_{1}\right) \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $m_{1}=m /(a, m)$ and $\left(m_{1}, a_{1}\right)=1$. Note that any given solution to (4.12) lifts to a unique solution of the congruence $a x^{2} \equiv h(\bmod m)$. As $\left(m_{1}, a_{1}\right)=1,(4.12)$ is the same as $x^{2} \equiv k\left(\bmod m_{1}\right)$. Writing $m_{1}=q_{1} q_{2}$, with $q_{1}$ being the product of prime powers $p^{l}$ with $v_{p}\left(m_{1}\right) \leq v_{p}(k)$ and $q_{2}$ being the product of those prime powers $p^{l}$ with $v_{p}\left(m_{1}\right)>v_{p}(k)$.

The equation $x^{2} \equiv k\left(\bmod q_{1}\right)$ is same as $x^{2} \equiv 0\left(\bmod q_{1}\right)$ having at the most $H\left(q_{1}\right)$ solutions. Also, $x^{2} \equiv k\left(\bmod q_{2}\right)$ has at $\operatorname{most} \tau\left(q_{2}\right)$ solutions. Combining the two, we find the total number of solutions to be at most $H\left(q_{1}\right) \tau\left(q_{2}\right)$. As $q_{1} \mid m$, we get $H\left(q_{1}\right) \leq H(m)$ and since $\tau\left(q_{2}\right) \leq \tau(m)$, the proof is complete.

Lemma 4.26. For $H(n)$ as in (4.11), we have

$$
\sum_{n \leq x} \frac{H(n) \tau(n)}{n^{\beta}}= \begin{cases}O(1), & \beta>1  \tag{4.13}\\ O\left(\log ^{5} x\right), & \beta=1 \\ O\left(x^{1-\beta}(\log x)^{4}\right), & 0<\beta<1\end{cases}
$$

Proof. For any $n \leq x$, we can write it uniquely as $n=r^{2} s$, with $s$ squarefree. Moreover, we then have $H(n)=H\left(r^{2} s\right)=r$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n \leq x} H(n) \tau(n) & =\sum_{r^{2} s \leq x} r \cdot \tau\left(r^{2} s\right) \leq \sum_{r \leq \sqrt{x}} r \cdot \tau\left(r^{2}\right) \sum_{s \leq x / r^{2}} \tau(s) \leq \sum_{r \leq \sqrt{x}} r \cdot \tau\left(r^{2}\right) \frac{x}{r^{2}} \log \frac{x}{r^{2}} \\
& \leq x \log x \sum_{r \leq \sqrt{x}} \frac{\tau\left(r^{2}\right)}{r}=x \log x \sum_{r \leq \sqrt{x}} \frac{1}{r} \sum_{k \mid r^{2}} 1=x \log x \sum_{k \leq x} \sum_{\substack{2 \\
r^{2}(\bmod k) \\
r \leq \sqrt{x}}} \frac{1}{r}
\end{aligned}
$$

Now, write $k=a^{2} b$, with $b$ square-free, so that $k \mid r^{2}$ implies $a b \mid r$. So, the above is

$$
x \log x \sum_{a^{2} b \leq x} \sum_{\substack{r \leq \sqrt{x} \\ r \equiv 0(\bmod a b)}} \frac{1}{r} \leq x \log ^{2} x \sum_{a^{2} b \leq x} \frac{1}{a b} \ll x(\log x)^{4} .
$$

The result now follows from partial summation.
Lemma 4.27. Let $k$ and $L$ be positive integers. The number of tuples $\left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right)$
of positive integers satisfying $\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]=L$ is at most $\tau(L)^{k}$.

Proof. Let $J(L)$ denote the number of solutions to $\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]=L$. Since $J$ is multiplicative, it is enough to look at prime powers. For $L=p^{e}$, the number of solutions to $\left[p^{e_{1}}, \ldots, p^{e_{k}}\right]=p^{e}$, or $\max \left\{e_{1}, \ldots, e_{k}\right\}=e$ is clearly bounded by $(e+1)^{k}=\tau\left(p^{e}\right)^{k}$. The proof now follows from the multiplicativity of $J$.

### 4.4 Proof of the main results

### 4.4.1 Proof of Theorem 4.4

We have

$$
S=\sum_{H<n \leq x} \sum_{\substack{a|n \\ b| n-h}} f(a) g(b)=\sum_{H<n \leq x} \sum_{[a, b] \leq x} f(a) g(b)+\sum_{H<n \leq x} \sum_{[a, b]>x} f(a) g(b) .
$$

The second term on the right is $O(E(x))$ by Lemma 4.19 (b). The first term is

$$
\sum_{[a, b] \leq x} f(a) g(b) \sum_{\substack{H<n \leq x \\ n \equiv 0(\bmod a) \\ n \equiv b(\bmod b)}} 1=\sum_{\substack{[a, b] \leq x \\(a, b) \mid h}} f(a) g(b)\left(\frac{x-H}{[a, b]}+O(1)\right)
$$

Also, the $O$-term above is $O(E(x))$ by Lemma 4.18 (c). The main term is then

$$
(x-H) \sum_{(a, b) \mid h} \frac{f(a) g(b)}{[a, b]}-(x-H) \sum_{\substack{(a, b) \mid h \\[a, b]>x}} \frac{f(a) g(b)}{[a, b]} .
$$

Clearly, the first term is $(x-H) C(h)$ and the second term is $O(E(x))$ by Lemma 4.17 (b). This completes the proof of Theorem 4.4.

### 4.4.2 Proof of Theorem 4.6

The given sum can be written as

$$
S=\sum_{H<n \leq x} \mu^{2}(n) G(n-h)=\sum_{\substack { H<n \leq x \\
\begin{subarray}{c}{a^{2}|n \\
b| n-h{ H < n \leq x \\
\begin{subarray} { c } { a ^ { 2 } | n \\
b | n - h } }\end{subarray}} \mu(a) g(b)=T_{1}+T_{2},
$$

where $T_{1}$ corresponds to $\left[a^{2}, b\right] \leq x$ and $T_{2}$ corresponds to $\left[a^{2}, b\right]>x$. We note that $T_{2}=O\left(x^{\epsilon} E_{1}(x)\right)$ by Lemma 4.20 (b). Now

$$
T_{1}=\sum_{a, b} \mu(a) g(b) \sum_{\substack{n=0\left(\bmod a^{2}\right) \\ n=h(\bmod b) \\ H<n \leq x}} 1=\sum_{\substack{\left[a^{2}, b\left|\leq x \\\left(a^{2}, b\right)\right| h\right.}} \mu(a) g(b)\left(\frac{x-H}{\left[a^{2}, b\right]}+O(1)\right)=T_{3}+T_{4} .
$$

We first estimate $T_{3}$, which is

$$
T_{3}=(x-H) \sum_{\left(a^{2}, b\right) \mid h} \frac{\mu(a) g(b)}{\left[a^{2}, b\right]}+O\left(x \sum_{\left[a^{2}, b\right] \geq x} \frac{|g(b)|}{\left[a^{2}, b\right]}\right) .
$$

The main term is $(x-H) K(h)$ and the error is $O\left(E_{1}(x)\right)$ by Lemma 4.23 (b). Also,

$$
T_{4}=O\left(\sum_{\left[a^{2}, b\right] \leq x}|g(b)|\right)=O\left(E_{1}(x)\right),
$$

by Lemma 4.22 (b). This completes the proof of Theorem 4.6.

### 4.4.3 Proof of Theorem 4.9

For (a), denote the sum by $S_{1}$ and let $L$ be the LCM of $d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{1}=\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{d_{j} \mid n+a_{j}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right) & =\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{\substack{d_{j} \mid n+a_{j} \\
L \leq x}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)+\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{\substack{n j \mid n+a_{j} \\
L>x}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right) \\
& =S_{11}+S_{12} .
\end{aligned}
$$

For the second term, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{12} & \ll \sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{L \mid \prod_{L>x}\left(n+a_{j}\right)} \sum_{\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]=L}\left(d_{1} \ldots d_{k}\right)^{-\alpha} \ll \sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{L \mid \prod_{L>x}\left(n+a_{j}\right)} \frac{\tau(L)^{k}}{L^{\alpha}} \\
& \ll x^{-\alpha+\epsilon} \sum_{n \leq x} \tau\left(\prod\left(n+a_{j}\right)\right) \ll x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon},
\end{aligned}
$$

since by Lemma 4.27, the number of $d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}$ satisfying $\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]=L$ is at most $\tau(L)^{k}=O\left(x^{\frac{2 k^{2}}{\log \log x}}\right)=O\left(x^{\epsilon}\right)$. This is because $L \leq x^{k}, \tau\left(n+a_{j}\right) \ll x^{\frac{2}{\log \log x}}$ and $k=o(\log \log \log x)$. The first term is

$$
S_{11}=\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\ L \leq x}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right) \sum_{\substack{n \equiv-a_{j}\left(\bmod d_{j}\right) \\ n \leq x}} 1
$$

Note that the $n$-sum is nonempty $\Longleftrightarrow\left(d_{i}, d_{j}\right) \mid a_{i}-a_{j}$ for all $i, j$. We write $\sum^{\prime}$ to denote this condition. In this case, the solution is unique modulo $L$ and hence

$$
\begin{align*}
S_{11} & =\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\
L \leq x}}^{\prime} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right) \sum_{\substack{n=-a_{j}(\bmod \\
n \leq x}} 1=\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\
L \leq x}}^{\prime} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)\left(\frac{x}{\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]}+O(1)\right) \\
& =x \sum_{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}}^{\prime} \frac{\prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)}{\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]}+O\left(x \sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\
L>x}} \frac{\prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)}{\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]}\right)+O\left(\sum_{\substack{d_{1} \ldots, d_{k} \\
L \leq x}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)\right) \tag{4.14}
\end{align*}
$$

The first term in (4.14) gives the desired main term $C_{1} x$. The series for $C_{1}$ is convergent owing to the fact that $f_{j}(d) \ll d^{-\alpha}$. Using $f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right) \ll d_{j}^{-\alpha}$ and the fact that number of $d_{j}$ 's satisfying $\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]=L$ is at most $\tau(L)^{k} \ll x^{\frac{2 k^{2}}{\log \log x}} \ll x^{\epsilon}$, we find that the second $O$-term above is at most

$$
\ll x^{1+\epsilon} \sum_{L>x} \frac{1}{L^{1+\alpha}} \ll x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon} .
$$

Similarly, the third error term in (4.14) is

$$
x^{\epsilon} \sum_{L \leq x} L^{-\alpha} \ll x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon} .
$$

Combining the estimates $S_{11}$ and $S_{12}$, we prove (a).

Now, we prove (b). Denoting the given sum by $S_{2}$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{2}=\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\
d_{j} \mid n^{2}+a_{j}}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right) & =\sum_{\substack{n \leq x}} \sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\
d_{j}, d_{k}+a_{j} \\
L \leq x}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)+\sum_{\substack{n \leq x}} \sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\
d_{j} \mid d_{j}+a_{j} \\
L>x}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right) \\
& =S_{21}+S_{22} .
\end{aligned}
$$

As in (a), the second term $S_{22}$ is at most

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{22} & \ll \sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{L \left\lvert\, \prod_{\substack{\left(n^{2}+a_{j}\right) \\
L \gg}} \sum_{\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]=L}\left(\prod d_{j}\right)^{-\alpha} \ll \sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{\substack{\mid \prod\left(n^{2}+a_{j}\right) \\
L>x}} \frac{\tau(L)^{k}}{L^{\alpha}}\right.} \\
& \ll x^{-\alpha+\epsilon} \sum_{n \leq x} \tau\left(\prod\left(n^{2}+a_{j}\right)\right) \ll x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon},
\end{aligned}
$$

where we again use Lemma 4.27, $\tau(L)^{k} \ll x^{\epsilon}$ and that $\tau\left(\prod\left(n+a_{j}\right)\right) \ll x^{\epsilon}$ from the proof of (a). The first term is

$$
S_{11}=\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\ L \leq x}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right) \sum_{\substack{n^{2} \equiv-a_{j}\left(\bmod d_{j}\right) \\ n \leq x}} 1
$$

To have a solution to the congruence $n^{2} \equiv-a_{j}\left(\bmod d_{j}\right)$, first we need to have $\left(d_{i}, d_{j}\right) \mid a_{i}-a_{j}$ for all $i, j$. Again, we write $\sum^{\prime}$ to denote this condition. Let $\lambda\left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right)$ be the number of solutions modulo $L=\left[d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right]$ to the system of
congruences $n^{2} \equiv-a_{j}\left(\bmod d_{j}\right)$. Therefore,

$$
\begin{align*}
S_{21}= & \sum_{\substack{d_{1} \ldots, d_{k} \\
L \leq x}}^{\prime} \lambda\left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right) \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)\left(\frac{x}{L}+O(1)\right) \\
= & x \sum_{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}}^{\prime} \frac{\lambda\left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right) \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)}{L}+x \sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\
L>x}}^{\prime} \frac{\lambda\left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right) \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)}{L}  \tag{4.15}\\
& +\sum_{\substack{d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k} \\
L \leq x}}^{\prime} \lambda\left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{k}\right) \prod_{j=1}^{k} f_{j}\left(d_{j}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

The first term of (4.15) gives the main term $C_{2} x$. We shall estimate the second and third terms of (4.15). We note that the system of congruences $n^{2} \equiv-a_{j}\left(\bmod d_{j}\right)$ reduces to $n^{2} \equiv b(\bmod L)$ and this has at most $H(L) \tau(L)$ solutions modulo $L$ by Lemma 4.25. Hence, the second term of (4.15) is at most

$$
\begin{aligned}
x \sum_{x<L \leq x^{k}} \frac{H(L) \tau(L)}{L^{1+\alpha}} & \ll x^{1-\alpha} \sum_{L \leq x^{k}} \frac{H(L) \tau(L)}{L} \ll x^{1-\alpha}\left(\log x^{k}\right)^{6}=x^{1-\alpha}(k \log x)^{6} \\
& \ll x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon},
\end{aligned}
$$

from Lemma 4.26 and that $k=o(\log \log \log x)$. The third term of (4.15) is at most

$$
\sum_{L \leq x} \frac{H(L) \tau(L)}{L^{\alpha}} \ll x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon},
$$

by Lemma 4.26. Combining the estimates for $S_{21}$ and $S_{22}$, we complete the proof.

### 4.4.4 Proof of Theorem 4.12

Write the given sum as

$$
\begin{aligned}
S & =\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{\varphi(p+2)}{p+2} \frac{\varphi(p+1)}{p+1}=\sum_{\substack{ \\
p \leq x}} \sum_{\substack{a|p+2 \\
b| p+1}} \frac{\mu(a) \mu(b)}{a b} \\
& =T_{1}+T_{2}+T_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $T_{1}$ corresponds to $[a, b] \leq(\log x)^{A}, T_{2}$ for $(\log x)^{A}<[a, b] \leq x$ and $T_{3}$ for $[a, b]>x$. Now

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{3} \leq \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n}} \sum_{\substack{a|n+2 \\ b| n+1 \\[a, b] \geq x}} \frac{1}{a b}=O\left(\log ^{2} x\right) \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

by Lemma 4.19 (b). Moreover

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{2} \leq \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n \leq x}} \sum_{\substack{a \mid n+2 \\ b, n+1 \\(\log x)^{A}<[a, b \leq \leq}} \frac{1}{a b}=\sum_{\substack{(a, b)=1 \\(\log x)^{A}<[a, b] \leq x}} \frac{1}{a b}\left(\frac{x}{a b}+O(1)\right)=O\left(\frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-1}}\right) . \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{1}=\sum_{p \leq x} \sum_{\substack{[a, b] \leq(\log x)^{A} \\ a|p+2 \\ b| p+1}} \frac{\mu(a) \mu(b)}{a b}=\sum_{\substack{[a, b] \leq(\log x)^{A}}} \frac{\mu(a) \mu(b)}{a b} \sum_{\substack{p \leq x \\ p \equiv-2(\bmod a) \\ p \equiv-1(\bmod b)}} 1 . \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $p \neq 2$, the $p$-sum survives only if $(a, b)=1$ and $a$ is odd. Thus

$$
T_{1}=\sum_{\substack{a \text { odd } \geq 1 \\(a, b)=1 \\ a b \leq(\log x)^{A}}} \frac{\mu(a) \mu(b)}{a b}\left(\frac{\operatorname{li}(x)}{\varphi(a b)}+O\left(\frac{x}{(\log x)^{A}}\right)\right),
$$

by Siegel's theorem on primes in arithmetic progressions. Clearly, the $O$-term is $O\left(\frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-1}}\right)$ and the main term is

$$
\operatorname{li}(x) \sum_{\substack{a \text { odd } \\(a, b)=1}} \frac{\mu(a) \mu(b)}{a b \varphi(a b)}-\operatorname{li}(x) \sum_{\substack{a \text { odd } \\(a, b)=1 \\ a b>(\log x)^{A}}} \frac{\mu(a) \mu(b)}{a b \varphi(a b)} .
$$

The second term is $O\left(\frac{x}{(\log x)^{A-1}}\right)$ and the first term is clearly $\frac{\mathrm{l}(x)}{2} \prod_{p>2}\left(1-\frac{2}{p(p-1)}\right)$.

### 4.4.5 Replacing $x^{\epsilon}$ by a power of $\log x$ in Theorem 4.6

Now, we sketch how $x^{\epsilon}$ can be replaced by a power of $\log x$ in the error term of Theorem 4.6, provided that $\alpha$ is not close to $1 / 2$. We recall that $x^{\epsilon}$ comes from Lemma 4.20, and therefore we restrict our attention to this lemma. Recall that

$$
S=\sum_{\substack{A=2^{k} \leq x^{1 / 2} \\
B=2^{\prime} \leq x \\
A^{2} B>x}} S_{A, B}, \quad \text { where } S_{A, B}=\sum_{\substack{H<n \leq x \\
\begin{array}{l}
a a^{2} \mid n \\
b \sim n-h \\
a \sim A \\
b \sim B
\end{array}}} \mu(a) b^{-\alpha} .
$$

Here $A$ and $B$ run over powers of 2 and satisfy $A \leq x^{1 / 2}, B \leq x$ as well as $A^{2} B>x$.

Case I: $x^{0.05} \leq A \leq x^{0.45}$. In this case, Lemma 4.20 (a) tells us that $S_{A, B} \ll$ $x^{1+\epsilon} /\left(A B^{\alpha}\right)$. Summing $A, B$ over powers of 2 , we have
$S \ll x^{1+\epsilon} \sum_{\substack{x^{0.05} \leq A \leq x^{0.45} \\ x / A^{2}<B \leq x}} \frac{1}{A B^{\alpha}} \ll x^{1-\alpha+\epsilon} \sum_{x^{0.05} \leq A \leq x^{0.45}} A^{2 \alpha-1} \ll\left\{\begin{array}{ll}x^{0.55-0.1 \alpha+\epsilon}, & \alpha>1 / 2 \\ x^{0.95-0.9 \alpha+\epsilon}, & \alpha<1 / 2 .\end{array}\right.$,
and the above is $\ll E_{1}(x)$ whenever $\epsilon<0.1|\alpha-1 / 2|$.
Case II: $A \leq x^{0.05}$. In this case, we claim that

$$
S_{A, B} \ll \frac{x(\log A)^{10}}{A B^{\alpha}}
$$

To prove it, write $n=a^{2} c\left(\right.$ since $\left.a^{2} \mid n\right)$ and let

$$
\begin{equation*}
T=\left\{(a, b, c, d): a^{2} c-b d=h, a \sim A, b \sim B\right\} \tag{4.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

This means that $S_{A, B} \ll B^{-\alpha}|T|$. Since $b d=a^{2} c-h \leq 2 x$ and $a^{2} b>x$, we have $d \leq 2 a^{2} \ll x^{0.1}$. To bound the number of elements in $T$, first fix $a$, $d$, so that the congruence $a^{2} c-h \equiv 0(\bmod d)$ has at most $\left(a^{2}, d\right)$ solutions in $c(\bmod d)$.

As $c \leq x / a^{2}$, the number of choices for $c$ is at most $\left(\frac{x}{a^{2} d}+O(1)\right)\left(a^{2}, d\right)$ and since $a \ll x^{0.05}, d \ll x^{0.1}$, the $O$-term can be absorbed into the main term and therefore

$$
|T| \ll \sum_{\substack{a \sim A \\ d \leq 2 a^{2}}} \frac{x\left(a^{2}, d\right)}{a^{2} d} \ll \frac{x(\log x)^{10}}{A}
$$

which proves the claim. Summing $S_{A, B}$ over $A \leq x^{0.05}, A^{2} B>x$ over powers of 2 now gives

$$
S \ll x(\log x)^{10} \sum_{\substack{A \leq x^{0.05} \\
B \leq x}} \frac{1}{A B^{\alpha}} \ll(\log x)^{10}\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
x^{0.95-0.9 \alpha}, & \alpha>1 / 2 \\
x^{1-\alpha}, & \alpha<1 / 2 .
\end{array}<E_{1}(x)(\log x)^{10}\right.
$$

Case III: $A \geq x^{0.45}, B>x^{0.2}$. Here again, Lemma 4.20 (a) gives $S_{A, B} \ll$ $x^{1+\epsilon} /\left(A B^{\alpha}\right)$ and summing $A$ and $B$ over powers of 2, we get $S \ll E_{1}(x)$.

Case IV: $A \geq x^{0.45}, B \leq x^{0.2}$. In this case, we again claim that

$$
S_{A, B} \ll \frac{x(\log B)^{10}}{A B^{\alpha}}
$$

Just as in Case II, we need an upper bound for $|T|$, with $T$ as given in (4.19). Since $a^{2} c \leq x$ and $a>x^{0.45}$, one has $c<x^{0.1}$. Fixing $c$ and $b$, Lemma 4.25, tells us that $a^{2} c-h \equiv 0(\bmod b)$ has at most $L(b) \tau(b)$ solutions for $a(\bmod b)$. Since $a \sim A$, the number of choices for $a$ is at most $\left(\frac{A}{b}+O(1)\right) L(b) \tau(b)$. The $O$-term can be ignored again as $b \sim B<A$. Also, since $a^{2} c \leq x$, we have $c \ll x / A^{2}$. Summing this over $c \ll x / A^{2}$ and $b \sim B$ and applying Lemma 4.26, the claim follows. Now, summing $A$ and $B$ over powers of 2 in the relevant range, we find that $S \ll(\log x)^{10} E_{1}(x)$.

## Chapter 5

## Number of factorizations of an

## integer

In this chapter, we study a problem concerning the Oppenheim's factorization function, that counts the number of ways of writing a positive integer as a product of factors larger than 1 without taking the order into consideration. We estimate the number of distinct values of this function not exceeding a given parameter $x$.

### 5.1 Oppenheim's factorization function

Definition 5.1. Let $f(n)$ denote the number of unordered factorizations of $n$ into factors larger than 1, i.e., $f(n)$ is the number of tuples $\left(n_{1}, \ldots, n_{r}\right)$, with $1<n_{1} \leq$ $n_{2} \leq \cdots \leq n_{r}$ and $n=n_{1} n_{2} \ldots n_{r}$.

For example, $f(18)=4$, since 18 has the factorizations

$$
18, \quad 2 \cdot 9, \quad 3 \cdot 6, \quad 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 .
$$

This function is a multiplicative analogue of the the partition function.

The properties of this function have been studied before. Oppenheim [Opp26] obtained the asymptotic formula

$$
\sum_{n \leq x} f(n) \sim \frac{x \exp (2 \sqrt{\log x})}{2 \sqrt{\pi}(\log x)^{3 / 4}}
$$

Laterf Canfield, Erdős and Pomerance [CEP83] showed that the maximal order of $f(n)$ is

$$
n \exp \left((-1+o(1)) \frac{\log n \cdot \log \log \log n}{\log \log n}\right)
$$

For any $x \geq 1$, let $\mathscr{F}(x)$ be the the set of values of $f(n)$, not exceeding $x$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathscr{F}(x)=\{f(n): f(n) \leq x\} . \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

In [CEP83], the authors claimed that they could prove $\# \mathscr{F}(x)=x^{o(1)}$, as $x \rightarrow \infty$, but did not include a proof. In this connection, Luca, Mukhopadhyay and Srinivas [LMS10] proved that

$$
\# \mathscr{F}(x)=x^{O(\log \log \log x / \log \log x)}
$$

Their bound was improved by Balasubramanian and Luca [BL11], who proved that

$$
\# \mathscr{F}(x) \leq \exp \left(9(\log x)^{2 / 3}\right), \quad \text { for all } x \geq 1
$$

### 5.2 The main result

In this chapter and [BS17], we further improve this bound. We prove:

Theorem 5.2. Let $C=2 \pi \sqrt{2 / 3}$ and $x$ be sufficiently large. Then

$$
\# \mathscr{F}(x) \leq \exp \left(C \sqrt{\frac{\log x}{\log \log x}}\left(1+O\left(\frac{\log \log \log x}{\log \log x}\right)\right)\right) .
$$

We have strong reasons to believe that up to the constant $C$, the above bound is essentially the best possible. We will give reasons for believing the same in the final section.

### 5.3 Preliminaries

In this section, we give some preliminary background needed for the proof.

### 5.3.1 A generalized partition function

In [CEP83], the authors made the following observations:

$$
\begin{align*}
f\left(q^{n}\right) & =p(n), \quad q \text { prime }  \tag{5.2}\\
f\left(p_{1} \ldots p_{r}\right) & =B_{r}, \quad p_{1}, \ldots, p_{r} \text { distinct primes. } \tag{5.3}
\end{align*}
$$

Here $p(n)$ is the partition function and $B_{r}$ is the $r^{\text {th }}$ Bell number, which also happens to be the number of partitions of a set with $r$ distinct elements.

In view of the observations (5.2), (5.3) as well as the remarks made by the authors of [CEP83], we generalize the partition function to $\mathbb{N}^{r}$.

Notation 5.3. For any $r \geq 1$, let

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{Z}^{+}(r):=\left(\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}\right)^{r} \backslash\{\mathbf{0}\}, \quad \text { where } \mathbf{0}=(0, \ldots, 0) . \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Definition 5.4. Let $\boldsymbol{\alpha}=\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right) \in \mathbb{N}^{r}$. A partition of $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ is an unordered decomposition

$$
\alpha=\boldsymbol{\beta}_{1}+\cdots+\boldsymbol{\beta}_{l},
$$

where $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{\boldsymbol{i}} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)$, for each $1 \leq i \leq l$ and the addition is component-wise. The
number of partitions of $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ is denoted by $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$.

Example 5.5. The partitions of $\boldsymbol{\alpha}=(1,2)$ are

$$
(1,2), \quad(1,0)+(0,2), \quad(0,1)+(1,1), \quad(0,1)+(0,1)+(1,0) .
$$

Remark 5.6. When $r=1$, the above corresponds to the usual partition function in $\mathbb{N}$. Moreover, any such partition $\pi$ satisfying

$$
\boldsymbol{\alpha}=\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} h(\boldsymbol{\beta}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\beta},
$$

can be represented as

$$
\pi=\prod_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} \boldsymbol{\beta}^{h(\boldsymbol{\beta})}
$$

as in the case $r=1$. Here, $h(\boldsymbol{\beta})$ is the number of times $\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)$ appears in the partition (note that all but finitely many $h(\boldsymbol{\beta})$ 's are zero). For example, when $r=2$, the partition $\pi$ of $(2,3)$ given by $(2,3)=(0,1)+(0,1)+(1,0)+(1,1)$ can be written as $\pi=(0,1)^{2} \cdot(1,0) \cdot(1,1)$.

Remark 5.7. The function $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ can be seen as a partition of the multi-set

$$
\{1,1, \ldots, 1,2, \ldots, 2, \ldots, r, \ldots, r\}
$$

with each $i$ having exactly $\alpha_{i}$ copies, for $1 \leq i \leq r$.

The following lemma generalizes the observations in (5.2) and (5.3).

Lemma 5.8. If $n=p_{1}^{\alpha_{1}} \ldots p_{r}^{\alpha_{r}}$ and $\boldsymbol{\alpha}=\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right)$, then $f(n)=p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$.

Proof. Let $n=n_{1} n_{2} \ldots n_{l}$ be a nontrivial factorization of $n$, with $n_{i}>1$ for each $i$.

For each $1 \leq i \leq l$, let

$$
n_{i}=\prod_{j=1}^{r} p_{j}^{\beta_{i j}} \quad \text { and } \quad \boldsymbol{\beta}_{\boldsymbol{i}}=\left(\beta_{i 1}, \ldots, \beta_{i r}\right) .
$$

Then, clearly $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{\boldsymbol{i}} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)$ and $\sum_{i=1}^{l} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{\boldsymbol{i}}=\boldsymbol{\alpha}$. Therefore, each unordered factorization gives rise to a partition of $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$. Clearly, the partition obtained in this way is unique. The converse follows analogously.

Hence, $\# \mathscr{F}(x)$ is bounded above by the number of unordered tuples $\boldsymbol{\alpha}=$ $\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right)$, which satisfy $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq x$. We record this as the following corollary:

## Corollary 5.9.

$$
\# \mathscr{F}(x) \leq \#\left\{1 \leq \alpha_{1} \leq \cdots \leq \alpha_{r}: p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq x\right\} .
$$

Our job is therefore reduced to determining the distribution of $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq x$.

### 5.3.2 A generating function for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$

We give a generating function for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$, which is later used in order to obtain a lower bound for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$.

Notation 5.10. Let $\boldsymbol{q}=\left(q_{1}, \ldots, q_{r}\right)$, with $\left|q_{i}\right|<1$ for each $1 \leq i \leq r$. For $\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)$, we use the notation

$$
\boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\beta}}:=q_{1}^{\beta_{1}} \ldots q_{r}^{\beta_{r}} .
$$

We have the following generating function for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ :

Lemma 5.11. Let

$$
P(\boldsymbol{q})=\prod_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)}\left(1-\boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\right)^{-1}
$$

Then $P(\boldsymbol{q})$ is a generating function for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$; i.e., for any $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in \mathbb{N}^{r}$, the coefficient of $\boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ in $P(\boldsymbol{q})$ is $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$.

Remark 5.12. When $r=1$, this corresponds to the generating function of the partition function $p(n)$.

Proof of Lemma 5.11. Since the given product converges locally uniformly, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
P(\boldsymbol{q})=\prod_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)}\left(\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{q}^{l \boldsymbol{\beta}}\right)=\sum_{h: \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \geq 0} \boldsymbol{q}^{h(\boldsymbol{\beta}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\beta}} \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, the coefficient of $\boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ above is the number of functions $h: \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$, for which

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} h(\boldsymbol{\beta}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\beta}=\boldsymbol{\alpha} . \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

We show that the number of such $h$ equals $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$. For a partition $\pi$ of $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$, write the decomposition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi=\prod_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} \boldsymbol{\beta}^{h(\boldsymbol{\beta})} \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This defines $h$ uniquely. Conversely, any such function $h$ gives rise to a unique decomposition in (5.6). This completes the proof.

We also need some bounds on certain binomial coefficients. We prove them in the next section.

### 5.3.3 Some bounds on factorials and binomial coefficients

We begin with the following.

Lemma 5.13. Let

$$
h_{1}(x)=\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^{x+\frac{1}{2}}, \quad h_{2}(x)=\frac{x+1}{x+2}\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^{x+\frac{3}{2}}
$$

Then, as $x \rightarrow \infty$, the functions $h_{1}$ and $h_{2}$ converge to e decreasingly.

Proof. It is clear that both $h_{1}(x)$ and $h_{2}(x)$ converge to $e$ as $x \rightarrow \infty$. To show that they are decreasing, we will use the following inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\log \left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)=\int_{x}^{x+1} \frac{d t}{t} \leq \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{x}+\frac{1}{x+1}\right)=\frac{x+\frac{1}{2}}{x(x+1)}, \quad \text { for all } x \geq 1 . \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Taking logarithmic derivative of $h_{1}$, we get

$$
\frac{h_{1}^{\prime}(x)}{h_{1}(x)}=\log \left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)-\frac{x+\frac{1}{2}}{x(x+1)} \leq 0
$$

by (5.8) for all $x \geq 1$. Therefore, $h_{1}$ is decreasing.

To show $h_{2}$ is decreasing, we look at

$$
\frac{h_{2}^{\prime}(x)}{h_{2}(x)}=\log \left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)-\frac{x^{2}+\frac{5}{2} x+3}{x(x+1)(x+2)} \leq \frac{x+\frac{1}{2}}{x(x+1)}-\frac{x^{2}+\frac{5}{2} x+3}{x(x+1)(x+2)}<0,
$$

for all $x \geq 1$. This completes the proof.

This leads to the following:

Lemma 5.14. Let $n$ and $k$ be positive integers. Then
(a)

$$
(k+1)!\leq \frac{2 k^{k+\frac{3}{2}}}{e^{k-1}}
$$

(b)

$$
\binom{k+n}{k} \geq \frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2}} \frac{(k+n)^{k+n+\frac{1}{2}}}{k^{k+\frac{1}{2}} n^{n+\frac{1}{2}}}
$$

Proof. Proof is by induction on $k \geq 1$ (for any $n \geq 1$ ).
We first prove (a). When $k=1$, (a) is trivially true. So, assume that (a) holds for some $k \geq 1$. Then, by induction

$$
\begin{equation*}
(k+2)!=(k+2)(k+1)!\leq \frac{2(k+2) k^{k+\frac{3}{2}}}{e^{k-1}} \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

We need to show that the RHS of (5.9) is at most $\frac{2(k+1)^{k+\frac{5}{2}}}{e^{k}}$, which is equivalent to

$$
\frac{k+1}{k+2}\left(1+\frac{1}{k}\right)^{k+\frac{3}{2}} \geq e
$$

and this is true by Lemma 5.13 for the function $h_{2}$.

Next, we prove (b). When $k=1$, this reduces to

$$
\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^{n+\frac{1}{2}} \leq 2 \sqrt{2}
$$

This is true because $h_{1}$ is decreasing implying its maximum occurs at $n=1$.

Now, suppose that (b) holds true for $(k, n)$. We want to prove it holds for $(k+1, n)$ as well. By induction

$$
\begin{equation*}
\binom{k+n+1}{k+1}=\frac{k+n+1}{k+1}\binom{k+n}{k} \geq \frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2}} \frac{(k+n+1)}{(k+1)} \frac{(k+n)^{k+n+\frac{1}{2}}}{k^{k+\frac{1}{2}} n^{n+\frac{1}{2}}} . \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

We need to show that the RHS of (5.10) is at least

$$
\frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2}} \frac{(k+n+1)^{k+n+\frac{3}{2}}}{(k+1)^{k+\frac{3}{2}} n^{n+\frac{1}{2}}},
$$

and this is equivalent to

$$
\left(1+\frac{1}{k}\right)^{k+\frac{1}{2}} \geq\left(1+\frac{1}{k+n}\right)^{k+n+\frac{1}{2}}
$$

which is true since $h_{1}$ is decreasing. This completes the proof.
Remark 5.15. It was possible to prove Lemma 5.14 using Stirling's formula. We chose this approach because we wanted to a bound valid for all $k, n \geq 1$ without bothering about the error terms occurring in Stirling's approximation.

We prove the following lemma about the exponential of a power series:
Lemma 5.16. Suppose that

$$
F(\boldsymbol{q})=a(\mathbf{0})+\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)}^{\infty} a(\boldsymbol{n}) \boldsymbol{q}^{n}
$$

is convergent in $\left\{\boldsymbol{q}:\left|q_{i}\right|<1\right\}$, with real coefficients satisfying $a(\boldsymbol{n}) \geq 0$, for $\boldsymbol{n} \in$ $\mathbb{Z}^{+}(r) \cup\{\mathbf{0}\}$. Then the power series of $G(\boldsymbol{q})=\exp (F(\boldsymbol{q}))$ around $\mathbf{0}$ also has nonnegative coefficients.

Proof. Note that

$$
G(\boldsymbol{q})=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{F(\boldsymbol{q})^{k}}{k!} .
$$

Now, since $a(\boldsymbol{n}) \geq 0$, for each $\boldsymbol{n} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)$, it follows that the coefficients of $F(\boldsymbol{q})^{k}$ are non-negative for each $k \geq 0$. Therefore, $G(\boldsymbol{q})$ has non-negative coefficients.

The next lemma gives an upper bound to number of tuples of positive integers satisfying $\sum n_{i} \leq y$.

Lemma 5.17. The number of unordered tuples $\left(n_{1}, \ldots, n_{l}\right)$ in $\mathbb{N}$ satisfying

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{l} n_{i} \leq y
$$

is at most $y \exp (\pi \sqrt{2 y / 3})$, for all $y \geq 1$.
Proof of Lemma 5.17. Suppose that $\sum_{i=1}^{l} n_{i}=n \leq y$. From the proof of Theorem 15.3 in [Nat00, $\operatorname{Pg} 468]$, we have the upper bound $p(n) \leq \exp (\pi \sqrt{2 n / 3}), \quad$ for all $n \geq 1$.

Therefore, the total number of choices for $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{l}$ is at most

$$
\sum_{n \leq y} \exp (\pi \sqrt{2 n / 3}) \leq y \exp (\pi \sqrt{2 y / 3}) .
$$

### 5.3.4 A lower bound for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$

Now, we obtain a lower bound for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ in terms of a generalized hypergeometric series.

Lemma 5.18. Let $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in \mathbb{N}^{r}$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \geq \frac{1}{e} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(k+1)!} \prod_{i=1}^{r}\binom{k+\alpha_{i}}{k} \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark 5.19. The RHS of (5.11) is a generalized hypergeometric series

$$
\frac{1}{e}{ }_{r} F_{r}\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\alpha_{1}+1 & \ldots & \ldots & \alpha_{r-1}+1 & \alpha_{r}+1 \\
1 & \ldots & \ldots & 1 & 2
\end{array} ; 1\right) .
$$

When $\boldsymbol{\alpha}=(1,1, \ldots, 1)$, equality holds in (5.11) and the RHS of (5.11) becomes the Dobiński's formula for the $r^{\text {th }}$ Bell number $B_{r}$.

Proof of Lemma 5.18. Taking logarithms in the expression for $P(\boldsymbol{q})$ in Lemma 5.11, we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\log P(\boldsymbol{q}) & =\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)}-\log \left(1-\boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\right)=\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{\boldsymbol{q}^{m \boldsymbol{\beta}}}{m}=\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} \boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \sum_{m \mid \beta_{i} \forall i} \frac{1}{m} \\
& =\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} \frac{\sigma\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{r}\right)}{\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{r}\right)} \boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\beta}}=\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} \boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\beta}}+H(\boldsymbol{q}), \tag{5.12}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\sigma\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{r}\right)$ denotes $\sigma\left(\operatorname{gcd}\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{r}\right)\right)$, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
H(\boldsymbol{q})=\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)}\left(\frac{\sigma\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{r}\right)}{\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{r}\right)}-1\right) \boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\beta}} . \tag{5.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Taking exponential in (5.12), we get $P(\boldsymbol{q})=\exp \left(\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} \boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\right) \cdot \exp (H(\boldsymbol{q}))$. We have $\sum_{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}(r)} \boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\beta}}=\sum_{\substack{\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{r} \geq 0 \\ \sum \beta_{j} \geq 1}} q_{1}^{\beta_{1}} \ldots q_{r}^{\beta_{r}}=\sum_{\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{r} \geq 0} q_{1}^{\beta_{1}} \ldots q_{r}^{\beta_{r}}-1=\frac{1}{\left(1-q_{1}\right) \ldots\left(1-q_{r}\right)}-1$.

Since $H(\boldsymbol{q})$ has non-negative coefficients with constant term 0 , it follows by Lemma 5.16 that $\exp (H(\boldsymbol{q}))$ also has non-negative coefficients with constant term 1. So, the coefficient of $\boldsymbol{q}^{\alpha}$ in $P(\boldsymbol{q})$ is at least $1 / e$ times the coefficient of $\boldsymbol{q}^{\alpha}$ in $\exp \left(\prod_{i=1}^{r}\left(1-q_{i}\right)^{-1}\right)$. Since

$$
\begin{equation*}
\exp \left(\prod_{i=1}^{r}\left(1-q_{i}\right)^{-1}\right)=1+\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!} \prod_{i=1}^{r}\left(1-q_{i}\right)^{-k}, \tag{5.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $(1-q)^{-k}=1+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\binom{k+n-1}{k-1} q^{n}$, the coefficient of $\boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ in (5.15) equals

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!} \prod_{i=1}^{r}\binom{k+\alpha_{i}-1}{k-1}=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(k+1)!} \prod_{i=1}^{r}\binom{k+\alpha_{i}}{k} .
$$

This completes the proof.

For $\boldsymbol{\alpha}=\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right) \in \mathbb{N}^{r}$ and $z>0$, define

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, z)=z \prod_{i=1}^{r}\left(1+\frac{\alpha_{i}}{z}\right)^{-1} . \tag{5.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, $g(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, z)$ is a strictly increasing function of $z$ with $g(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, 1)<1$ since

$$
\frac{g^{\prime}(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, z)}{g(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, z)}=\frac{r+1}{z}-\sum_{i=1}^{r} \frac{1}{z+\alpha_{i}}>0
$$

for all $z>0$. Therefore, $g(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, z)=1$ has a unique positive solution $z(\boldsymbol{\alpha})>1$. Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=N(\boldsymbol{\alpha})=\lfloor z(\boldsymbol{\alpha})\rfloor . \tag{5.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, we prove a lower bound for $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$.
Proposition 5.20. Let $\boldsymbol{\alpha}=\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right) \in \mathbb{N}^{r}$ and $N=N(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ be as in (5.17). Then
(a)

$$
p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \geq \frac{e^{N-2}}{2 N^{\frac{3}{2}}} \prod_{i=1}^{r} \frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2 N}}\left(1+\frac{N}{\alpha_{i}}\right)^{\alpha_{i}+\frac{1}{2}}
$$

(b) Further, if $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq x$, then for $x$ sufficiently large, we have

$$
r \leq R:=\frac{2 \log x}{\log \log x}\left(1+\frac{2 \log \log \log x}{\log \log x}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad N \leq 3 \log x .
$$

Notation 5.21. The quantity $N=N(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ depends entirely on $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$. From now onwards, we denote this by $N$ for the sake of simplicity.

Proof of Proposition 5.20. With $N$ from (5.17), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, N) \leq 1 \leq g(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, N+1) . \tag{5.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\prod_{i=1}^{r}\left(1+\frac{\alpha_{i}}{N}\right) \geq N \tag{5.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

To prove (a), we use the bound given in Lemma 5.18, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \geq \frac{1}{e} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(k+1)!} \prod_{i=1}^{r}\binom{k+\alpha_{i}}{k}=\frac{1}{e} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} T(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, k) \tag{5.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
T(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, k):=\frac{1}{(k+1)!} \prod_{i=1}^{r}\binom{k+\alpha_{i}}{k} .
$$

We do not have an asymptotic formula for the sum in (5.20). Fortunately for us, the series converges very rapidly and therefore an optimally chosen term $T(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, k)$ will be good enough to provide a good lower bound.

Applying Lemma 5.14 to $T(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, k)$, we have for any $k \geq 1$, that

$$
\begin{equation*}
T(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, k) \geq \frac{e^{k-1}}{2 k^{k+\frac{3}{2}}} \prod_{i=1}^{r} \frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2}} \frac{\left(k+\alpha_{i}\right)^{k+\alpha_{i}+\frac{1}{2}}}{\alpha_{i}^{\alpha_{i}+\frac{1}{2}} k^{k+\frac{1}{2}}} \tag{5.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Choosing $k=N$ in (5.21), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
T(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, N) \geq \frac{e^{N-1}}{2 N^{N+\frac{3}{2}}} \prod_{i=1}^{r} \frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2 N}}\left(1+\frac{\alpha_{i}}{N}\right)^{N}\left(1+\frac{N}{\alpha_{i}}\right)^{\alpha_{i}+\frac{1}{2}} \tag{5.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using (5.19) in (5.22), we get

$$
p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \geq \frac{T(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, N)}{e} \geq \frac{e^{N-2}}{2 N^{\frac{3}{2}}} \prod_{i=1}^{r} \frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2 N}}\left(1+\frac{N}{\alpha_{i}}\right)^{\alpha_{i}+\frac{1}{2}}
$$

which proves (a).

Now we prove (b). From Lemma 5.18, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \geq \frac{1}{e} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(k+1)!} \prod_{i=1}^{r}\binom{k+\alpha_{i}}{k} \geq \frac{1}{e} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k^{r}}{k!} . \tag{5.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Considering the term $k=\lceil r / 2\rceil$, and using the inequality $1 / k!\geq 1 / k^{k}$, for all $k \geq 1$, we obtain

$$
x \geq p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \geq \frac{1}{e} \frac{\lceil r / 2\rceil^{r}}{\lceil r / 2\rceil!} \geq \frac{1}{e}\lceil r / 2\rceil^{\lfloor r / 2\rfloor} .
$$

From this, it follows that $r \leq R$, for all $x \geq 24$.

To show $N \leq 3 \log x$, we take logarithms in (a) of Proposition 5.20, to obtain

$$
N-1.04 R-0.5(R+3) \log N-\log x-2.7 \leq 0 .
$$

Substituting $R$, we find that $N \leq 3 \log x$, for all $x \geq e^{9540}$. This completes the proof of Proposition 5.20.

### 5.4 Proof of Theorem 5.2

Assume $x$ is sufficiently large. Let $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in \mathbb{N}^{r}$ be such that $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq x$. Taking logarithm in the inequality in Proposition 5.20 (a), and transferring the negative terms to RHS, we obtain

$$
N+\sum_{i=1}^{r}\left(\alpha_{i}+0.5\right) \log \left(1+\frac{N}{\alpha_{i}}\right) \leq \log x+0.5(r+3) \log N+1.04 r+2.7
$$

Using the bounds for $N, r$ from Proposition 5.20 (b) above and simplifying, we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{r} \alpha_{i} \log \left(1+\frac{N}{\alpha_{i}}\right) \leq 2 \log x\left(1+O\left(\frac{\log \log \log x}{\log \log x}\right)\right) \tag{5.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

We split the set $\left\{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{r}\right\}$ into two parts $I$ and $J$, where

$$
I=\left\{\alpha_{i}: \alpha_{i} \leq A(N+1)\right\} \quad \text { and } \quad J=\left\{\alpha_{i}: \alpha_{i}>A(N+1)\right\},
$$

and $A>0$ is a parameter depending only on $x$. We shall choose

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\frac{(\log \log x)^{6}}{(\log x)^{1 / 2}} \tag{5.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

We separately estimate the number of choices for elements in $I$ and $J$.

For elements of $I$, we have $\alpha_{i} \leq A(N+1)$, which means

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \log \left(1+\frac{N}{\alpha_{i}}\right) \geq \log \left(1+\frac{N}{A(N+1)}\right) \geq \log \left(1+\frac{1}{2 A}\right) \\
\geq & \frac{\log \log x}{2}\left(1+O\left(\frac{\log \log \log x}{\log \log x}\right)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $\alpha_{i} \in I$. With this applied to (5.24), we obtain (ignoring the elements of $J$ )

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{I} \alpha_{i} \leq \frac{4 \log x}{\log \log x}\left(1+O\left(\frac{\log \log \log x}{\log \log x}\right)\right) \tag{5.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

By Lemma 5.17 applied to (5.26), the number of choices for $\alpha_{i}$ 's in $I$, is at most

$$
\begin{equation*}
\exp \left(2 \pi \sqrt{\frac{2 \log x}{3 \log \log x}}\left(1+O\left(\frac{\log \log \log x}{\log \log x}\right)\right)\right) \tag{5.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, we estimate the total number of choices for elements of $J$. For any $1 \leq i \leq r$, we have $p\left(\alpha_{i}\right) \leq p(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq x$. Also, from [Mar03, Corollary 3.1], we have the lower bound $p(n) \geq \exp (2 \sqrt{n}) / 14$, for all $n \geq 1$. In particular, for each $\alpha_{i} \in J$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{i} \leq \frac{1}{4}(\log 14 x)^{2} \leq \log ^{2} x, \quad \text { for all } x \geq 14 \tag{5.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the next lemma, we give an upper bound for the cardinality of $J$.

Lemma 5.22. With J as before, we have

$$
\# J \leq \frac{4 \sqrt{\log x}}{(\log \log x)^{5}}
$$

Proof. Recall that $g(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, N+1) \geq 1$, which implies

$$
N+1 \geq \prod_{i=1}^{r}\left(1+\frac{\alpha_{i}}{N+1}\right) \geq \prod_{\alpha_{i} \in J}\left(1+\frac{\alpha_{i}}{N+1}\right) \geq(1+A)^{\# J}
$$

since $\alpha_{i}>A(N+1)$, for all $\alpha_{i} \in J$. Since $A<1$, we have $\log (1+A) \geq A / 2$ and from Proposition 5.20, we have $\log (N+1) \leq \log (1+3 \log x) \leq 2 \log \log x$, for all $x>e^{4}$. Hence,

$$
\# J \leq \frac{\log (N+1)}{\log (A+1)} \leq \frac{4 \sqrt{\log x}}{(\log \log x)^{5}}
$$

This proves the lemma.

From (5.28) and Lemma 5.22, the number of choices for elements of $J$ is at most

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\log ^{2} x\right)^{\# J} \leq \exp \left(\frac{8 \sqrt{\log x}}{(\log \log x)^{4}}\right) \tag{5.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, from (5.27) and (5.29), the total number of choices for $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ is at most

$$
\exp \left(2 \pi \sqrt{\frac{2 \log x}{3 \log \log x}}\left(1+O\left(\frac{\log \log \log x}{\log \log x}\right)\right)\right)
$$

This completes the proof of Theorem 5.2.

### 5.5 Final remarks

We believe that the bound obtained in Theorem 5.2 is the best possible apart from the constant $C$. Our reasons for believing the same are as follows:

$$
S=\left\{\boldsymbol{\alpha}: \alpha_{i} \leq \sqrt{\log x} \forall i \text { and } \sum \alpha_{i} \leq \frac{B \log x}{\log \log x}\right\}
$$

Then, for each $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in S$, we have $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})=O(x)$ and the number of elements in this set is at least $\exp \left(c_{1} \sqrt{\frac{\log x}{\log \log x}}\right)$. However, we are unable to show that the values of $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$, as $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ runs over $S$, are largely distinct, i.e., they do not repeat too often. Calculations do seem to suggest that the number of such distinct values of $p(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$, as $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in S$ have a lower bound of a similar order. We will return to this problem later.

## Appendix A

## Appendix for Chapter 2

## A. 1 Partial sums of Möbius and related functions

We prove bounds for the partial sums of the Möbius function. We have the following:

Lemma A.1. Let $\left\{b_{n}\right\}_{n \geq 1}$ be any sequence of reals and for any $k \geq 0$, define

$$
B_{k}(x):=\sum_{n \leq x} b_{n}\left(\log \frac{x}{n}\right)^{k} .
$$

Then for all $0 \leq r \leq k-1$, we have

$$
B_{k}(x)=\frac{k(k-1) \ldots(k-r)}{r!} \int_{1}^{x}\left(\log \frac{x}{t}\right)^{k-r-1} B_{r}(t) \frac{d t}{t} .
$$

Proof. Consider the quantity

$$
\begin{align*}
\int_{1}^{x}\left(\log \frac{x}{t}\right)^{k-r-1} B_{r}(t) \frac{d t}{t} & =\int_{1}^{x}\left(\log \frac{x}{t}\right)^{k-r-1}\left(\sum_{n \leq t} b_{n}\left(\log \frac{t}{n}\right)^{r}\right) \frac{d t}{t} \\
& =\sum_{n \leq x} b_{n} \int_{n}^{x} \frac{\left(\log \frac{x}{t}\right)^{k-r-1}\left(\log \frac{t}{n}\right)^{r}}{t} d t \tag{A.1}
\end{align*}
$$

Making the change of variable $\lambda=\left(\log \frac{t}{n}\right) /\left(\log \frac{x}{n}\right)$, we find that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{n}^{x} \frac{\left(\log \frac{x}{t}\right)^{k-r-1}\left(\log \frac{t}{n}\right)^{r}}{t} d t=\left(\log \frac{x}{n}\right)^{k} \int_{0}^{1}(1-\lambda)^{k-r-1} \lambda^{r} d \lambda=\left(\log \frac{x}{n}\right)^{k} \frac{(k-r-1)!r!}{k!} . \tag{A.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

From (A.1) and (A.2), the proof is complete.

We define a function $f_{0}$ as follows:

Definition A.2. For an interval $(A, B)$, we define the arithmetic function $f_{0}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{0}=\mu * \Lambda_{(A, B)} . \tag{A.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Although the function depends upon the choice of interval $(A, B)$, we denote it by $f_{0}$ as the interval $(A, B)$ will be clear when writing $f_{0}$.

Definition A.3. Let $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ be an arithmetic function. Define

$$
m_{q, k}(x, f)=\sum_{\substack{m \leq x \\(m, q)=1}} \frac{f(m)}{m}\left(\log \frac{x}{m}\right)^{k}
$$

Proposition A.4. Let $x \geq 1$ and $q \geq 1$ be a positive integer. Then we have the following bounds:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\left|m_{q, 0}(x, \mu)\right| \leq 1, & \left|m_{q, 0}\left(x, f_{0}\right)\right| \leq \log B \\
\left|m_{q, 1}(x, \mu)\right| \leq 1.00303 \frac{q}{\varphi(q)}, & \left|m_{q, 1}\left(x, f_{0}\right)\right| \leq 1.00303 \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \log B \\
\left|m_{q, 2}(x, \mu)\right| \leq \frac{2 q}{\varphi(q)} \log x, & \left|m_{q, 2}\left(x, f_{0}\right)\right| \leq \frac{2 q}{\varphi(q)} \log x \cdot \log B \tag{A.6}
\end{array}
$$

Also, for all $k \geq 3$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|m_{q, k}(x, \mu)\right| \leq k \frac{q}{\varphi(q)}(\log x)^{k-1} . \tag{A.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. The proof uses a lemma of Granville-Ramaré [GR96] and the bounds of Ramaré [Ram15]. First, we note that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left|m_{q, k}\left(x, f_{0}\right)\right| & =\left|\sum_{\substack{a b \leq x \\
(a b, q)=1 \\
A<b \leq B}} \frac{\mu(a)}{a} \frac{\Lambda(b)}{b}\left(\log \frac{x}{a b}\right)^{k}\right| \leq \sum_{\substack{A<b \leq B \\
(b, q)=1}} \frac{\Lambda(b)}{b}\left|\sum_{\substack{a \leq x / b \\
(a, q)=1}} \frac{\mu(a)}{a}\left(\log \frac{x}{a b}\right)^{k}\right| \\
& \leq \sum_{A<b \leq B} \frac{\Lambda(b)}{b}\left|m_{q, k}\left(\frac{x}{b}, \mu\right)\right| . \tag{A.8}
\end{align*}
$$

The first part of (A.4) is [GR96, Lemma 2.10], although a stronger bound is given in [Ram14, Theorem 1.1]. The first parts of (A.5) and (A.6) are due to Ramaré [Ram15, Corollary 1.10, 1.11]. For the second part of (A.4), we use (A.8) with $k=0$ along with the bound $\left|m_{q, 0}(x, \mu)\right| \leq 1$ from the first part of (A.4) to obtain

$$
\left|m_{q, k}\left(x, f_{0}\right)\right| \leq \sum_{A<b \leq B} \frac{\Lambda(b)}{b} \leq \log B .
$$

The second parts of (A.5) and (A.6) are obtained in the same manner.

For (A.7), we use Lemma A. 1 with $r=2$ to obtain

$$
m_{q, k}(x)=\frac{k(k-1)(k-2)}{2} \int_{1}^{x}\left(\log \frac{x}{t}\right)^{k-3} m_{q, 2}(t) \frac{d t}{t} .
$$

Using the bound $\left|m_{q, 2}(t)\right| \leq 2 q / \varphi(q) \log t$ from (A.6) above, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|m_{q, k}(x)\right| & \leq \frac{k(k-1)(k-2)}{2} \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \int_{1}^{x} \frac{\left(\log \frac{x}{t}\right)^{k-3} \cdot 2 \log t}{t} d t \\
& \leq k(k-1)(k-2) \cdot(\log x)^{k-1} \frac{q}{\varphi(q)} \int_{0}^{1} t(1-t)^{k-3} d t \leq k \frac{q}{\varphi(q)}(\log x)^{k-1},
\end{aligned}
$$

since $\int_{0}^{1} t(1-t)^{k-3} d t=\frac{1}{(k-1)(k-2)}$. This completes the proof.

Now, we state the following bound from [HH13, Lemma C.2.2], also proved for $q \geq 27$ in [RS62, Theorem 15].

Lemma A.5. Let $q$ be a positive integer. Then, for any $s \geq \max \{3, q\}$, we have $q / \varphi(q) \leq F_{0}(s)$, where

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{0}(x)=e^{\gamma} \log \log x+\frac{2.50637}{\log \log x} \tag{A.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lemma A.6. $F_{0}(x) / x$ is decreasing for all $x \geq 3$.

Proof. It is enough to show that $F(x)-x F^{\prime}(x)>0$. This equals

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e^{\gamma} \log \log x+\frac{2.50637}{\log \log x}-x\left(\frac{e^{\gamma}}{x \log x}-\frac{2.50637}{x \log x(\log \log x)^{2}}\right) \\
= & \frac{e^{\gamma}\left((\log \log x)^{3} \log x-(\log \log x)^{2}\right)+2.50637(1+\log x \log \log x)}{\log x(\log \log x)^{2}}>0
\end{aligned}
$$

whenever $x \geq 3$.

## A. 2 Explicit values of $C_{j, k, \eta}$ and $T^{l}$ on monomials

In the next proposition, we give explicit values of constants $C_{j, k, \eta}$ in (H4). They will be useful when $y$ is large. When $y$ is small, we will need to resort to explicit numerical calculations using a program, as we need tight constants. The first two terms in (2.12) will be numerically calculated as they are proportional to $x$.

Proposition A.7. Let $k=1,2,3$ and $\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}$ and $P_{j, k, u_{0}}$ 's be as in (2.1) and (H1), respectively. Let $C_{j, k, \eta}, j=0,1,2$ be as in (H4). Then for all $y \geq u_{0}$, we can take

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{0, k, \eta}=1, \quad C_{1, k, \eta}=\left|\eta^{\prime}\right|_{1}, \quad C_{2, k, \eta}=3\left|\eta^{\prime}\right|_{\infty}+\int_{0}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime \prime}(t)\right| d t+2 k|\eta(t) / t|_{\infty} \tag{A.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. For $j=0$, we note that

$$
\left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}\right|_{1}=\int_{u_{0} / y}^{1}\left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}(t)\right| d t \leq \int_{0}^{1} \eta(t)(\log y t)^{k} d t \leq(\log y)^{k} \int_{0}^{1} \eta(t) d t=(\log y)^{k},
$$

which implies we can take $C_{0, k, \eta}=1$.

In the case $j=1$, we need to add an additional contribution due to the discontinuity of $\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime}$ at $u_{0} / y$. Observe that $\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime} \geq 0$ and therefore, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime}\right| 1-\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k} \\
= & \int_{u_{0} / y}^{1}\left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime}(t)\right| d t=\int_{u_{0} / y}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime}(t)(\log y t)^{k}+\eta(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime}\right| d t \\
\leq & \int_{u_{0} / y}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime}(t)\right|(\log y t)^{k} d t+\left(\left.\eta(t)(\log y t)^{k}\right|_{u_{0} / y} ^{1}-\int_{u_{0} / y}^{1} \eta^{\prime}(t)(\log y t)^{k} d t\right) \\
\leq & (\log y)^{k} \int_{0}^{1}\left(\left|\eta^{\prime}(t)\right|-\eta^{\prime}(t)\right) d t-\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k}=(\log y)^{k}\left|\eta^{\prime}\right|_{1}-\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k},
\end{aligned}
$$

since $\int_{0}^{1} \eta^{\prime}(t) d t=0$. This shows we can take $C_{1, k, \eta}=\left|\eta^{\prime}\right|_{1}$.

We now consider the case $j=2$. Here again, we have to consider additional contribution arising from the discontinuity at $u_{0} / y$. Therefore,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left|\eta_{(y), k, u_{0}}^{\prime \prime}\right|_{1}-\left|\eta^{\prime}\left(u_{0} / y\right)\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k}+k\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k-1} \frac{\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)}{u_{0} / y}\right| \\
= & \int_{u_{0} / y}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime \prime}(t)(\log y t)^{k}+2 \eta^{\prime}(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime}+\eta(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime \prime}\right| d t \\
\leq & (\log y)^{k} \int_{u_{0} / y}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime \prime}(t)\right| d t+2 \int_{u_{0} / y}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime}(t)\right|\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime} d t+\int_{u_{0} / y}^{1} \eta(t)\left|\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime \prime}\right| d t \tag{A.11}
\end{align*}
$$

where we use $\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime} \geq 0$. We note that $\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime \prime} \geq 0$ if and only if $t \leq$ $e^{k-1} / y$. Therefore, we split the last integral in (A.11) into two parts, namely $I_{0}=$
$\left(u_{0} / y, e^{k-1} / y\right)_{+}$and $I_{1}=\left(e^{k-1} / y, 1\right)_{+}$, where $(a, b)_{+}$denotes $(a, b) \cap\left(u_{0} / y, 1\right)$ if $a<b$ and is empty otherwise. Therefore, the last integral of (A.11) is

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int_{I_{0}} \eta(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime \prime} d t-\int_{I_{1}} \eta(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime \prime} d t \\
= & \left.\eta(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime}\right|_{I_{0}}-\left.\eta(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime}\right|_{I_{1}}+\sum_{j=0}^{1}(-1)^{j-1} \int_{I_{j}} \eta^{\prime}(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime} d t \\
\leq & \left.\eta(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime}\right|_{I_{0}}-\left.\eta(t)\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime}\right|_{I_{1}}+\int_{u_{0} / y}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime}(t)\right|\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime} d t \tag{A.12}
\end{align*}
$$

For the first two terms in (A.12), we consider three cases, namely (i) $e^{k-1} \leq u_{0} \leq y$, (ii) $u_{0} \leq e^{k-1} \leq y$ and (iii) $u_{0} \leq y \leq e^{k-1}$. In case (i), $I_{0}$ is empty and $I_{1}=\left(u_{0} / y, 1\right)$ and in case (iii), $I_{0}=\left(u_{0} / y, 1\right)$ and $I_{1}$ is empty. So, the first two terms of (A.12) contribute in the three cases:

$$
\pm k \frac{\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)}{u_{0} / y}\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k-1}, \quad 2 k \frac{\eta\left(e^{k-1} / y\right)}{e^{k-1} / y}(k-1)^{k-1}-\frac{\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)}{u_{0} / y}\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k-1}
$$

and therefore all of the above are at most $2 k|\eta(t) / t|_{\infty}(\log y)^{k-1}-k \frac{\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)}{u_{0} / y}\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k-1}$. This means that (A.11) is at most:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (\log y)^{k} \int_{0}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime \prime}(t)\right| d t+3 \int_{u_{0} / y}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime}(t)\right|\left((\log y t)^{k}\right)^{\prime} d t+2 k|\eta(t) / t|_{\infty}(\log y)^{k-1} \\
& \quad-k \frac{\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k-1}}{u_{0} / y} \\
& \leq\left(\int_{0}^{1}\left|\eta^{\prime \prime}(t)\right| d t+3\left|\eta^{\prime}\right|_{\infty}+2 k|\eta(t) / t|_{\infty}\right)(\log y)^{k}-3\left|\eta^{\prime}\right|_{\infty}\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k} \\
& \quad-k \frac{\eta\left(u_{0} / y\right)}{u_{0} / y}\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

This gives us the desired value for $C_{2, k, \eta}$ and completes the proof.

Now, we compute the value of the operator $T^{l}$ (defined in (2.8)) for monomials.

Lemma A.8. Let $k$ be a positive integer $l>-1$ be a real number. Let $T^{l}$ be as defined in (2.8). Then for $x \geq 1$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
T^{l} x^{k} \leq \rho_{l, k} \cdot x^{k}, \quad \text { where } \quad \rho_{l, k}=\sum_{r=0}^{k} \frac{\binom{k}{r} r!}{(l+1)^{r+1}} \tag{A.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

The values of $\rho_{l, k}, l \in\{0,1\}$ and $k \in\{1,2,3\}$ are given as follows:
Table A.1: Values of $\rho_{l, k}$

| $k$ | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\rho_{0, k}$ | 2 | 5 | 16 |
| $\rho_{1, k}$ | 0.75 | 1.25 | 2.375 |

Proof. For $x \geq 1$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
T^{l} x^{k} & =\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-t(l+1)}(x+t)^{k} d t=\sum_{r=0}^{k}\binom{k}{r} x^{k-r} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-t(l+1)} t^{r} d t \\
& =\sum_{r=0}^{k} \frac{\binom{k}{r} x^{k-r}}{(l+1)^{r+1}} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-t} t^{r} d t=\sum_{r=0}^{k} \frac{\binom{k}{r} r!}{(l+1)^{r+1}} x^{k-r} \leq \rho_{l, k} x^{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

## A. 3 Explicit values in the case $\eta=\eta_{0}$

Now, we give some explicit values for constants and for $P_{j, k, u_{0}}$ when $\eta=\eta_{0}$ given in (1.2). We note that $\eta_{0}$ satisfies (C1) and from Mathematica, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\eta_{0}^{\prime}\right|_{1}=6.194 \ldots, \quad\left|\eta_{0}^{\prime}\right|_{\infty}=\left|\eta_{0}(t) / t\right|_{\infty}=70 \quad \text { and } \quad \int_{0}^{1}\left|\eta_{0}^{\prime \prime}(t)\right| d t=89.327 \ldots, \tag{A.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

The following are the explicit values for $c_{\eta_{0}, l}, c_{\eta_{0}, l^{\prime}}$ and $b_{\eta_{0}, l}$ defined in (2.6).

Table A.2: Values of $c_{\eta, l}, c_{\eta, l^{\prime}}$ and $b_{\eta, l}$ when $\eta=\eta_{0}$

| $l$ | $c_{\eta_{0}, l}$ | $c_{\eta_{0}, l^{\prime}}$ | $b_{\eta_{0}, l}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 1 | $6.1948 \ldots$ | 2 |
| 1 | $1.70906 \ldots$ | $14.6946 \ldots$ | $3.418 \ldots$ |
| 2 | $3.55424 \ldots$ | $42.0314 \ldots$ | $7.1084 \ldots$ |
| 3 | $8.66541 \ldots$ | $143.6278 \ldots$ | $17.3308 \ldots$ |

We would now like to give expressions for $P_{j, k, u_{0}}, P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}$ and $P_{k, u_{0}}^{(1)}$ and also compute $T^{l} P(x)$, with $l=0,1$ for these polynomials $P_{j, k, u_{0}}$ for $k=1,2,3$ in the case $\eta=\eta_{0}$. From Proposition A. 7 for $k=1,2,3$ and using the values from (A.14), we can take $C_{0, k, \eta_{0}}=1, C_{1, k, \eta_{0}}=6.195$ and $C_{2, k, \eta_{0}}=720$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{0, k, u_{0}}(x)=x^{k}, \quad P_{1, k, u_{0}}(x)=6.195 x^{k} \quad \text { and } \quad P_{2, k, u_{0}}(x)=720 x^{k} . \tag{A.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

and therefore

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(x)=26.84 x^{k} \quad \text { and } \quad P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}(x)=166.23 x^{k}, \tag{A.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, from Lemma A.8, it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
T^{0} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(x)=720 \rho_{0, k} x^{k}, \quad T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(x)=26.84 \rho_{0, k} x^{k} . \tag{A.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

## A. 4 Simplification of $L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x)$ and $R_{\eta_{0}, k, q}(s, x, f)$

We now give a simplified upper bound for $L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x)$ in (2.35) for $k=1,2,3$.

Proposition A.9. Let $x \geq 10^{18}$ and let $L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x)$ be as given in (2.35). Assume that $s \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$. Then, for $k=1,2,3$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x) \leq A_{k}+\frac{B_{k}(\log 10 s)^{k+1}}{s} \tag{A.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
& A_{k}=0.002 C_{0, k, \eta}+0.00003 C_{1, k, \eta}+10^{-6} C_{2, k, \eta}, \\
& B_{k}=0.108 \sqrt{C_{0, k, \eta} C_{2, k, \eta}}+0.002 C_{2, k, \eta}+10^{-7} C_{1, k, \eta} \sqrt{\frac{C_{2, k, \eta}}{C_{0, k, \eta}}} \tag{A.19}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. We see from (2.35), that

$$
\begin{align*}
L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x)= & \frac{1}{x}\left(3 P_{1, k, u_{0}}(\log x)+\frac{0.355}{10^{6}} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log x)\right) \\
& +\frac{1}{\sqrt{5 x}}\left(\frac{2}{\pi} P_{1, k, u_{0}}(\log x)+\frac{1}{6 \pi^{2}} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log 2 x)+60 P_{0, k, u_{0}}(\log x)\right) \\
+ & \frac{1}{s}\left(\frac{4}{\pi} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(\log 10 s)+\frac{1}{10 \pi} \int_{\log u_{0}}^{\log 10 s} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}(t) d t+\frac{4}{5 \pi u_{0}} T^{0} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(0)}\left(\log u_{0}\right)\right. \\
& \left.+\frac{1}{60 \pi^{2}} T^{0} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log 10 s)\right) \\
+ & \frac{1}{s^{2}}\left(0.00355 T^{0} P_{2, k, u_{0}}(\log 10 s)+\frac{9}{25 \pi} P_{k, u_{0}}^{(2)}(\log 10 s)\right) \tag{A.20}
\end{align*}
$$

Consider the first two lines of (A.20). Using $P_{j, k, u_{0}}(\log x)=C_{j, k, \eta} \cdot(\log x)^{k}$ and $x \geq 10^{18}$, we find that the they contribute at most (for $k=1,2,3$ ):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\leq 0.002 C_{0, k, \eta}+0.00003 C_{1, k, \eta}+10^{-6} C_{2, k, \eta} . \tag{A.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, we look at the coefficient of $1 / s$ in (A.20). Using (H4), (2.5) and the value of $T^{l}$ from Lemma A. $8\left(T^{l} x^{k} \leq \rho_{l, k} x^{k}\right)$, we find that this is at most

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left(\frac{4 \sqrt{C_{0, k, \eta} C_{2, k, \eta}}}{\pi}+\frac{C_{2, k, \eta} \cdot \rho_{0, k}}{60 \pi^{2}}\right)(\log 10 s)^{k}+\frac{\sqrt{C_{0, k, \eta} C_{2, k, \eta}}}{10(k+1) \pi}(\log 10 s)^{k+1} \\
& +\frac{4 \rho_{0, k} \sqrt{C_{0, k, \eta} C_{2, k, \eta}}}{5 \pi} \cdot \frac{\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k}}{u_{0}} \tag{A.22}
\end{align*}
$$

$\leq B_{k}^{\prime}(\log 10 s)^{k+1}$,
where

$$
\begin{align*}
B_{k}^{\prime} & =\sqrt{C_{0, k, \eta} C_{2, k, \eta}}\left(\frac{4}{14 \pi}+\frac{1}{10(k+1) \pi}+\frac{4}{5 \pi} \frac{\rho_{0, k}}{14}\left(\frac{k}{14 e}\right)^{k}\right)+\frac{\rho_{0, k}}{14} \frac{C_{2, k, \eta}}{60 \pi^{2}}  \tag{A.23}\\
& \leq 0.108 \sqrt{C_{0, k, \eta} C_{2, k, \eta}}+0.00193 C_{2, k, \eta}
\end{align*}
$$

Here we use $\log 10 s>14$ which implies $\frac{\rho_{0, k}}{(\log 10 s)^{k+1}} \frac{\left(\log u_{0}\right)^{k}}{u_{0}} \leq \frac{\rho_{0, k}}{14^{k+1}}\left(\frac{k}{e}\right)^{k}$ (since the maximum of $(\log t)^{k} / t$ is $\left.(k / e)^{k}\right)$ and then use the values of $\rho_{0, k}$ from Table A.1.

Next, the coefficient of $1 / s^{2}$ in (A.20) is at most

$$
\begin{equation*}
\leq\left(0.0568 C_{2, k, \eta}+0.1146 C_{1, k, \eta} \sqrt{\frac{C_{2, k, \eta}}{C_{0, k, \eta}}}\right)(\log 10 s)^{k} . \tag{A.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, from (A.21), (A.22), (A.23) and (A.24) and using $s \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$, we find

$$
L_{k, u_{0}}(s, x) \leq A_{k}+\frac{B_{k}(\log 10 s)^{k+1}}{s}
$$

where $A_{k}$ and $B_{k}$ are as in (A.19). This completes the proof.

Remark A.10. When $\eta=\eta_{0}$, we have $A_{k}=0.0029 \ldots$ and $B_{k}=4.3379 \ldots$.

Next, we bound $R_{\eta, k, q}(s, y, f)$ in the case $\eta=\eta_{0}, f \in\left\{\mu, f_{0}\right\}$ and $k \in\{1,2,3\}$.

Proposition A.11. Suppose that $\eta=\eta_{0}$ and $s \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$. Let $B \leq \sqrt{x}$ and $f_{0}=\mu * \Lambda_{(A, B)}$ be as in (A.3). Then, the following are admissible choices:

$$
\begin{align*}
R_{\eta_{0}, 1, q}(s, x, \mu) & =0.00020506 x  \tag{A.25}\\
R_{\eta_{0}, 2, q}(s, x, \mu) & =\left(0.001824+\frac{2 F_{0}(s) \log x}{s}\right) x  \tag{A.26}\\
R_{\eta_{0}, 2, q}\left(s, x, f_{0}\right) & =\frac{2 x \log B}{s}\left(\log ^{2} 10 s+F_{0}(s) \log x\right),  \tag{A.27}\\
R_{\eta_{0}, 3, q}(s, x, \mu) & =\left(0.03494+\frac{4 F_{0}(s) \log ^{2} x}{s}\right) x \tag{A.28}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. We show that the $R_{\eta_{0}, k, q}$ given above satisfy the following inequality:

$$
R_{\eta_{0}, k, q}(s, x, f) \geq \frac{x}{2 s} \sum_{i=0}^{k} \sum_{j=0}^{i}\binom{k}{i}\binom{i}{j} b_{k-i}(\log 10 s)^{i-j}\left|m_{2 q, j}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, f\right)\right|
$$

where we denote $b_{k-i}=b_{\eta_{0}, k-i}$. For bounds related to $\left|m_{2 q, k}\right|$, we will use of Proposition A.4. We also bound $q / \varphi(q)$ by $F_{0}(q) \leq F_{0}(s)$ and use the fact that $F_{0}(s) / s$ is decreasing from Lemma A.6. We also note that $(\log 10 s)^{k} / s$ is decreasing as soon as $10 s>e^{k}$, which will clearly hold for $k=1,2,3$ since $s \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$. For the values of the constants $b_{l}$, we refer to Table A.2, from which allows us to take

$$
\begin{equation*}
b_{0}=2, \quad b_{1}=3.42, \quad b_{2}=7.11 \quad \text { and } \quad b_{3}=17.34 \tag{A.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

For (A.25), we have $k=1, f=\mu$ and the expression simplifies to

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{x}{2 s}\left(\left(b_{0}+b_{1} \log 10 s\right)\left|m_{2 q, 0}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, \mu\right)\right|+b_{0}\left|m_{2 q, 1}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, \mu\right)\right|\right) \\
\leq & \frac{x}{2 s}\left(b_{0}+b_{1} \log 10 s+1.00303 b_{0} F_{0}(s)\right) \\
\leq & 0.00020506 x
\end{aligned}
$$

for $s \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$ (as the above is decreasing in $s$ in that range).
For (A.26), the given expression is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \quad \frac{x}{2 s}\left(\left(b_{2}+2 b_{1} \log 10 s+b_{0} \log ^{2} 10 s\right)\left|m_{2 q, 0}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, \mu\right)\right|\right. \\
& \left.\quad \quad+\left(2 b_{1}+2 b_{0} \log 10 s\right)\left|m_{2 q, 1}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, \mu\right)\right|+b_{0}\left|m_{2 q, 2}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, \mu\right)\right|\right) \\
& \leq \frac{x}{2 s}\left(b_{2}+2 b_{1} \log 10 s+b_{0} \log ^{2} 10 s+\left(2.00606 b_{1}+0.00606 b_{0} \log 10 s\right) F_{0}(s)\right. \\
& \left.\quad+2 b_{0} F_{0}(s) \log x\right) \\
& \leq 0.001824 x+\frac{2 x F_{0}(s) \log x}{s} .
\end{aligned}
$$

For (A.27), we have $k=2$ and $f=f_{0}$, and the given expression is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{x}{2 s}\left(\left(b_{2}+2 b_{1} \log 10 s+b_{0} \log ^{2} 10 s\right)\left|m_{2 q, 0}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, f_{0}\right)\right|\right. \\
& \left.\quad+\left(2 b_{1}+2 b_{0} \log 10 s\right)\left|m_{2 q, 1}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, f_{0}\right)\right|+b_{0}\left|m_{2 q, 2}\left(\frac{x}{10 q s}, f_{0}\right)\right|\right) \\
& \leq \frac{x \log B}{2 s}\left(b_{2}+2.00606 b_{1} F_{0}(s)+\left(2 b_{1}+0.00606 b_{0} F_{0}(s)\right) \log 10 s\right. \\
& \left.\quad \quad+b_{0} \log ^{2} 10 s+2 b_{0} F_{0}(s) \log x\right) \\
& \leq \frac{x \log B}{2 s}\left(4 \log ^{2} 10 s+4 F_{0}(s) \log x\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

since for $s \geq 1.5 \cdot 10^{5}$, we have

$$
b_{2}+2.00606 b_{1} F_{0}(s)+\left(2 b_{1}+0.00606 b_{0} F_{0}(s)\right) \log 10 s<b_{0} \log ^{2} 10 s
$$

For (A.28), we have $k=3$ and $f=\mu$ and the given sum is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{x}{2 s}\left(b_{3}+3 b_{2} \log 10 s+3 b_{1} \log ^{2} 10 s+b_{0} \log ^{3} 10 s+6 F_{0}(s) \log \frac{x}{10 s}\left(b_{1}+b_{0} \log 10 s\right)\right. \\
& \left.\quad+1.00303 F_{0}(s)\left(3 b_{2}+6 b_{1} \log 10 s+3 b_{0} \log ^{2} 10 s\right)+4 b_{0} F_{0}(s) \log ^{2} \frac{x}{10 s}\right) \\
& \leq \frac{x}{2 s}\left(b_{3}+3.00909 b_{2} F_{0}(s)+\left(3 b_{2}+6(0.00303) b_{1} F_{0}(s)\right) \log 10 s\right. \\
& \quad+\left(3 b_{1}+1.00909 b_{0} F_{0}(s)\right) \log ^{2} 10 s+b_{0} \log ^{3} 10 s \\
& \left.\quad+\left(6 b_{1}-2 b_{0} \log 10 s\right) F_{0}(s) \log x+4 b_{0} F_{0}(s) \log ^{2} x\right) \\
& \leq 0.03494 x+\frac{4 x F_{0}(s) \log ^{2} x}{s} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This completes the proof.

## REFERENCES

[BG15] R. Balasubramanian and Sumit Giri. The mean-value of a product of shifted multiplicative functions and the average number of points of elliptic curves. J. Number Theory, 157:37-53, 2015.
[BGS17] R. Balasubramanian, Sumit Giri, and Priyamvad Srivastav. On correlations of certain multiplicative functions. J. Number Theory, 174:221-238, 2017.
[BL11] R. Balasubramanian and Florian Luca. On the number of factorizations of an integer. Integers, 11:A12, 5, 2011.
[Bom76] Enrico Bombieri. On twin almost primes. Acta Arith., 28(2):177-193, 1975/76.
[Bor56] KG Borodzkin. On I.M. Vinogradov's constant. In Proc. 3rd All-Union Math. Conf, volume 1, 1956.
[BS17] R. Balasubramanian and Priyamvad Srivastav. On the number of factorizations of an integer. J. Ramanujan Math. Soc., 32(4):417-430, 2017.
[Car66] L. Carlitz. A note on the composition of arithmetic functions. Duke Math. J., 33:629-632, 1966.
[CEP83] E. R. Canfield, Paul Erdős, and Carl Pomerance. On a problem of Oppenheim concerning "factorisatio numerorum". J. Number Theory, 17(1):1-28, 1983.
[CMS16] Giovanni Coppola, M. Ram Murty, and Biswajyoti Saha. On the error term in a Parseval type formula in the theory of Ramanujan expansions II. J. Number Theory, 160:700-715, 2016.
[CS02] E.-H. Choi and W. Schwarz. Mean-values of products of shifted arithmetical functions. In Analytic and probabilistic methods in number theory (Palanga, 2001), pages 32-41. TEV, Vilnius, 2002.
[DERZ97] J.-M. Deshouillers, G. Effinger, H. te Riele, and D. Zinoviev. A complete Vinogradov 3-primes theorem under the Riemann hypothesis. Electron. Res. Announc. Amer. Math. Soc., 3:99-104, 1997.
[DI82] J.-M. Deshouillers and H. Iwaniec. An additive divisor problem. J. London Math. Soc. (2), 26(1):1-14, 1982.
[GR96] Andrew Granville and Olivier Ramaré. Explicit bounds on exponential sums and the scarcity of squarefree binomial coefficients. Mathematika, 43(1):73-107, 1996.
[HB86] D. R. Heath-Brown. The divisor function $d_{3}(n)$ in arithmetic progressions. Acta Arith., 47(1):29-56, 1986.
[HH13] Harald Helfgott. The ternary Goldbach problem. Preprint, 2013.
[HH13a] Harald Helfgott. Minor arcs for Goldbach's problem. Preprint, 2013.
[HH13b] Harald Helfgott. Major arcs for Goldbach's problem. Preprint, 2013.
[HH13c] Harald Helfgott. The ternary Goldbach conjecture is true. Preprint, 2013.
[HL23] G. H. Hardy and J. E. Littlewood. Some problems of 'Partitio numerorum'; III: On the expression of a number as a sum of primes. Acta Math., 44(1):1-70, 1923.
[HP13] H. A. Helfgott and David J. Platt. Numerical verification of the ternary Goldbach conjecture up to $8.875 \cdot 10^{30}$. Exp. Math., 22(4):406-409, 2013.
[IK04] Henryk Iwaniec and Emmanuel Kowalski. Analytic number theory, volume 53 of American Mathematical Society Colloquium Publications. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2004.
[Kát69] I. Kátai. On the distribution of arithmetical functions. Acta Math. Acad. Sci. Hungar., 20:69-87, 1969.
[LMS10] Florian Luca, Anirban Mukhopadhyay, and Kotyada Srinivas. Some results on Oppenheim's "factorisatio numerorum" function. Acta Arith., 142(1):41-50, 2010.
[LW02] Ming-Chit Liu and Tianze Wang. On the Vinogradov bound in the three primes Goldbach conjecture. Acta Arith., 105(2):133-175, 2002.
[Mar03] Attila Maróti. On elementary lower bounds for the partition function. Integers, 3:A10, 9, 2003.
[Mir49a] L. Mirsky. On the frequency of pairs of square-free numbers with a given difference. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc., 55:936-939, 1949.
[Mir49b] L. Mirsky. Summation formulae involving arithmetic functions. Duke Math. J., 16:261-272, 1949.
[Mon68] H. L. Montgomery. A note on the large sieve. J. London Math. Soc., 43:93-98, 1968.
[MRT15] Kaisa Matomäki, Maksym Radziwiłł, and Terence Tao. An averaged form of Chowla's conjecture. Algebra Number Theory, 9(9):2167-2196, 2015.
[MV73] H. L. Montgomery and R. C. Vaughan. The large sieve. Mathematika, 20:119-134, 1973.
[Nat00] Melvyn B. Nathanson. Elementary methods in number theory, volume 195 of Graduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer-Verlag, New York, 2000.
[Opp26] A. Oppenheim. On an Arithmetic Function. J. London Math. Soc., 1(4):205-211, 1926.
[Pla16] David J. Platt. Numerical computations concerning the GRH. Math. Comp., 85(302):3009-3027, 2016.
[Ram95] Olivier Ramaré. On Šnirel'man's constant. Ann. Scuola Norm. Sup. Pisa Cl. Sci. (4), 22(4):645-706, 1995.
[Ram09] Olivier Ramaré. Arithmetical aspects of the large sieve inequality, volume 1 of Harish-Chandra Research Institute Lecture Notes. Hindustan Book Agency, New Delhi, 2009. With the collaboration of D. S. Ramana.
[Ram14] Olivier Ramaré. Explicit estimates on the summatory functions of the Möbius function with coprimality restrictions. Acta Arith., 165(1):1-10, 2014.
[Ram15] Olivier Ramaré. Explicit estimates on several summatory functions involving the Moebius function. Math. Comp., 84(293):1359-1387, 2015.
[Rea66] David Rearick. Correlation of semi-multiplicative functions. Duke Math. J., 33:623-627, 1966.
[RS62] J. Barkley Rosser and Lowell Schoenfeld. Approximate formulas for some functions of prime numbers. Illinois J. Math., 6:64-94, 1962.
[RS76] Hans-Egon Richert and Supramaniam Srinivasan. Lectures on sieve methods, volume 55. Tata Institute of Fundamental Research Bombay, 1976.
[ŠS07] Jonas Šiaulys and Gediminas Stepanauskas. On the mean value of the product of multiplicative functions with shifted argument. Monatsh. Math., 150(4):343-351, 2007.
[Ste97] G. Stepanauskas. The mean values of multiplicative functions. II. Liet. Mat. Rink., 37(2):212-223, 1997.
[Tao14] Terence Tao. Every odd number greater than 1 is the sum of at most five primes. Math. Comp., 83(286):997-1038, 2014.
[Vin37] I. M. Vinogradov. A new method in analytic number theory. Trudy Mat. Inst. Steklov., 10:5-122, 1937.

